

---

# AWS CloudHSM

## User Guide



## **AWS CloudHSM: User Guide**

Copyright © 2017 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon.

## Table of Contents

What Is AWS CloudHSM? .....	1
Features .....	1
Compliance .....	1
Pricing .....	2
Use Cases .....	2
Offload the SSL/TLS Processing for Web Servers .....	2
Protect the Private Keys for an Issuing Certificate Authority (CA) .....	2
Enable Transparent Data Encryption (TDE) for Oracle Databases .....	2
Concepts .....	3
Clusters .....	3
Backups .....	5
Client Tools and Libraries .....	7
HSM Users .....	9
Getting Started: Create A Cluster .....	11
Set Up the Prerequisites .....	11
Create an IAM User .....	11
Create a Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) .....	13
Create Private Subnets .....	13
Create a Cluster and HSM .....	13
Create a Cluster .....	14
Create an HSM .....	15
(Optional) Verify HSM Identity .....	16
Overview .....	16
Get Certificates from the HSM .....	18
Verify Certificate Chains .....	19
Extract and Compare Public Keys .....	20
AWS CloudHSM Root Certificate .....	20
Initialize the Cluster .....	22
Get the Cluster's Certificate Signing Request (CSR) .....	22
Sign the CSR .....	23
Initialize the Cluster .....	24
Launch a Client Instance .....	25
Launching a Client Instance .....	26
Connecting to Your Client Instance .....	27
Install and Configure the Client .....	27
Install the AWS CloudHSM Client and Command Line Tools .....	27
Edit the Client Configuration .....	27
Activate the Cluster .....	28
Managing Clusters .....	30
Adding or Removing HSMs .....	30
Adding an HSM .....	30
Removing an HSM .....	32
Deleting a Cluster .....	33
Creating a Cluster From a Backup .....	34
Tagging Resources .....	35
Adding or Updating Tags .....	35
Listing Tags .....	37
Removing Tags .....	37
Command Line Tools .....	39
cloudhsm_mgmt_util .....	39
Setup cloudhsm_mgmt_util .....	40
Basic Usage of cloudhsm_mgmt_util .....	40
key_mgmt_util .....	42
Getting Started .....	42

---

key_mgmt_util Reference .....	44
Managing HSM Users and Keys .....	96
Managing HSM Users .....	96
Create Users .....	96
List Users .....	97
Change a User's Password .....	98
Delete Users .....	98
Managing Keys .....	99
Generate Keys .....	99
Import Keys .....	100
Export Keys .....	101
Delete Keys .....	103
Share and Unshare Keys .....	103
Quorum Authentication (M of N) .....	104
Overview of Quorum Authentication .....	104
Additional Details about Quorum Authentication .....	105
First Time Setup for Crypto Officers .....	105
Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers .....	109
Change the Quorum Value for Crypto Officers .....	115
Using the Software Libraries .....	117
PKCS #11 Library .....	117
Supported PKCS #11 Key Types .....	117
Supported PKCS #11 Mechanisms .....	117
Supported PKCS #11 APIs .....	119
Installing the PKCS #11 Library .....	120
OpenSSL Library .....	122
Installing the OpenSSL Library .....	122
Java Library .....	123
Supported Keys .....	124
Supported Ciphers .....	124
Supported Digests .....	125
Supported Hash-Based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) Algorithms .....	126
Supported Sign/Verify Mechanisms .....	126
Installing the Java Library .....	126
Java Example Code .....	129
Integrating Third-Party Applications .....	148
Improve Web Server Security with SSL/TLS Offload .....	148
Set Up the Prerequisites .....	149
Import or Generate a Private Key and Certificate .....	150
Configure the Web Server .....	153
Oracle Database Encryption .....	157
Set Up the Prerequisites .....	158
Configure the Database and Generate the Master Encryption Key .....	159
Getting API Logs .....	162
Understanding AWS CloudHSM Log File Entries in CloudTrail .....	162
Troubleshooting .....	164
Lost Connection .....	164
Keep HSM Users In Sync .....	165
Verify Performance .....	165
Limits .....	167
Client and Software Version History .....	168
AWS CloudHSM Client .....	168
Current Version: 1.0.11 .....	168
Previous Versions .....	168
PKCS #11 Library .....	169
Current Version: 1.0.11 .....	169
Previous Versions .....	169

---

OpenSSL Library .....	170
Current Version: 1.0.11 .....	170
Previous Versions .....	170
Java Library .....	170
Current Version: 1.0.11 .....	170
Previous Versions .....	171
Document History .....	172

# What Is AWS CloudHSM?

AWS CloudHSM provides hardware security modules in the AWS Cloud. A hardware security module (HSM) is a computing device that processes cryptographic operations and provides secure storage for cryptographic keys.

## Topics

- [Features \(p. 1\)](#)
- [Compliance \(p. 1\)](#)
- [Pricing \(p. 2\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Use Cases \(p. 2\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Concepts \(p. 3\)](#)

## Features

When you use an HSM from AWS CloudHSM, you can perform a variety of cryptographic tasks:

- Generate, store, import, export, and manage cryptographic keys, including symmetric keys and asymmetric key pairs.
- Use symmetric and asymmetric algorithms to encrypt and decrypt data.
- Use cryptographic hash functions to compute message digests and hash-based message authentication codes (HMACs).
- Cryptographically sign data (including code signing) and verify signatures.
- Generate cryptographically secure random data.

To learn more about what you can do with AWS CloudHSM, see [Use Cases \(p. 2\)](#).

To learn more about the fundamental concepts of AWS CloudHSM, see [Concepts \(p. 3\)](#).

When you are ready to get started with AWS CloudHSM, see [Getting Started: Create A Cluster \(p. 11\)](#).

With AWS CloudHSM, you get your own HSM hosted in the AWS Cloud, giving you the control that comes with operating an HSM. If you want a managed service for creating and controlling your data's encryption keys, but you don't want or need to operate your own HSM, consider [AWS Key Management Service](#).

## Compliance

AWS and AWS Marketplace partners offer many solutions for protecting data in AWS. But some applications and data are subject to strict contractual or regulatory requirements for managing and using cryptographic keys. Using an HSM from AWS CloudHSM can help you meet corporate, contractual, and regulatory compliance requirements for data security in the AWS Cloud.

### FIPS 140-2

The Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) Publication 140-2 is a US government security standard that specifies security requirements for cryptographic modules that protect sensitive information. The HSMs provided by AWS CloudHSM comply with FIPS 140-2 level 3. For more information, see [FIPS Compliance](#) on the AWS website.

## PCI DSS

The Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS) is a proprietary information security standard administered by the [PCI Security Standards Council](#). The HSMs provided by AWS CloudHSM comply with PCI DSS. For more information, see [PCI DSS Compliance](#) on the AWS website.

## Pricing

With AWS CloudHSM, you pay by the hour with no long-term commitments or upfront payments. For more information, see [AWS CloudHSM Pricing](#) on the AWS website.

## AWS CloudHSM Use Cases

A hardware security module (HSM) in AWS CloudHSM can help you accomplish a variety of goals.

### Topics

- [Offload the SSL/TLS Processing for Web Servers \(p. 2\)](#)
- [Protect the Private Keys for an Issuing Certificate Authority \(CA\) \(p. 2\)](#)
- [Enable Transparent Data Encryption \(TDE\) for Oracle Databases \(p. 2\)](#)

## Offload the SSL/TLS Processing for Web Servers

Web servers and their clients (web browsers) can use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS). These protocols confirm the identity of the web server and establish a secure connection to send and receive data over the internet. This is known as HTTPS. The web server uses a public-private key pair and a public key certificate to establish an HTTPS session with each client. This process involves a lot of computation for the web server, but you can offload some of this computation to the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster. This is sometimes known as SSL acceleration. This offloading reduces the burden on your web server and provides extra security by storing the server's private key in the HSMs.

For information about setting up SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM, see [Improve Web Server Security with SSL/TLS Offload \(p. 148\)](#).

## Protect the Private Keys for an Issuing Certificate Authority (CA)

In a public key infrastructure (PKI), a certificate authority (CA) is a trusted entity that issues digital certificates. These digital certificates bind a public key to an identity (a person or organization) by means of public key cryptography and digital signatures. To operate a CA, you must maintain trust by protecting the private keys that sign the certificates issued by your CA. You can store these private keys in an HSM and use the HSM to perform the cryptographic signing operations.

## Enable Transparent Data Encryption (TDE) for Oracle Databases

Some versions of Oracle's database software offer a feature called Transparent Data Encryption (TDE). With TDE, the database software encrypts data before storing it on disk. The data in the database's table columns or tablespaces is encrypted with a table key or tablespace key. These keys are encrypted with the TDE master encryption key. You can store the TDE master encryption key in the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster, which provides additional security.

For information about setting up Oracle TDE with AWS CloudHSM, see [Oracle Database Encryption \(p. 157\)](#).

## AWS CloudHSM Concepts

The following concepts will help you get started with AWS CloudHSM.

### Topics

- [AWS CloudHSM Clusters \(p. 3\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Cluster Backups \(p. 5\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Client Tools and Software Libraries \(p. 7\)](#)
- [HSM Users \(p. 9\)](#)

## AWS CloudHSM Clusters

AWS CloudHSM provides hardware security modules (HSMs) in a *cluster*. A cluster is a collection of individual HSMs that AWS CloudHSM keeps in sync. You can think of a cluster as one logical HSM. When you perform a task or operation on one HSM in a cluster, the other HSMs in that cluster are automatically kept up to date.

You can create a cluster that has from 1 to 32 HSMs (the [default limit \(p. 167\)](#) is 6 HSMs per AWS account per AWS Region). You can place the HSMs in different Availability Zones in an AWS Region. Adding more HSMs to a cluster provides higher performance. Spreading clusters across Availability Zones provides redundancy and high availability.

Making individual HSMs work together in a synchronized, redundant, highly available cluster can be difficult, but AWS CloudHSM does some of the undifferentiated heavy lifting for you. You can add and remove HSMs in a cluster and let AWS CloudHSM keep the HSMs connected and in sync for you.

To create a cluster, see [Getting Started: Create A Cluster \(p. 11\)](#).

For more information about clusters, see the following topics.

### Topics

- [Cluster Architecture \(p. 3\)](#)
- [Cluster Synchronization \(p. 5\)](#)
- [Cluster High Availability and Load Balancing \(p. 5\)](#)

## Cluster Architecture

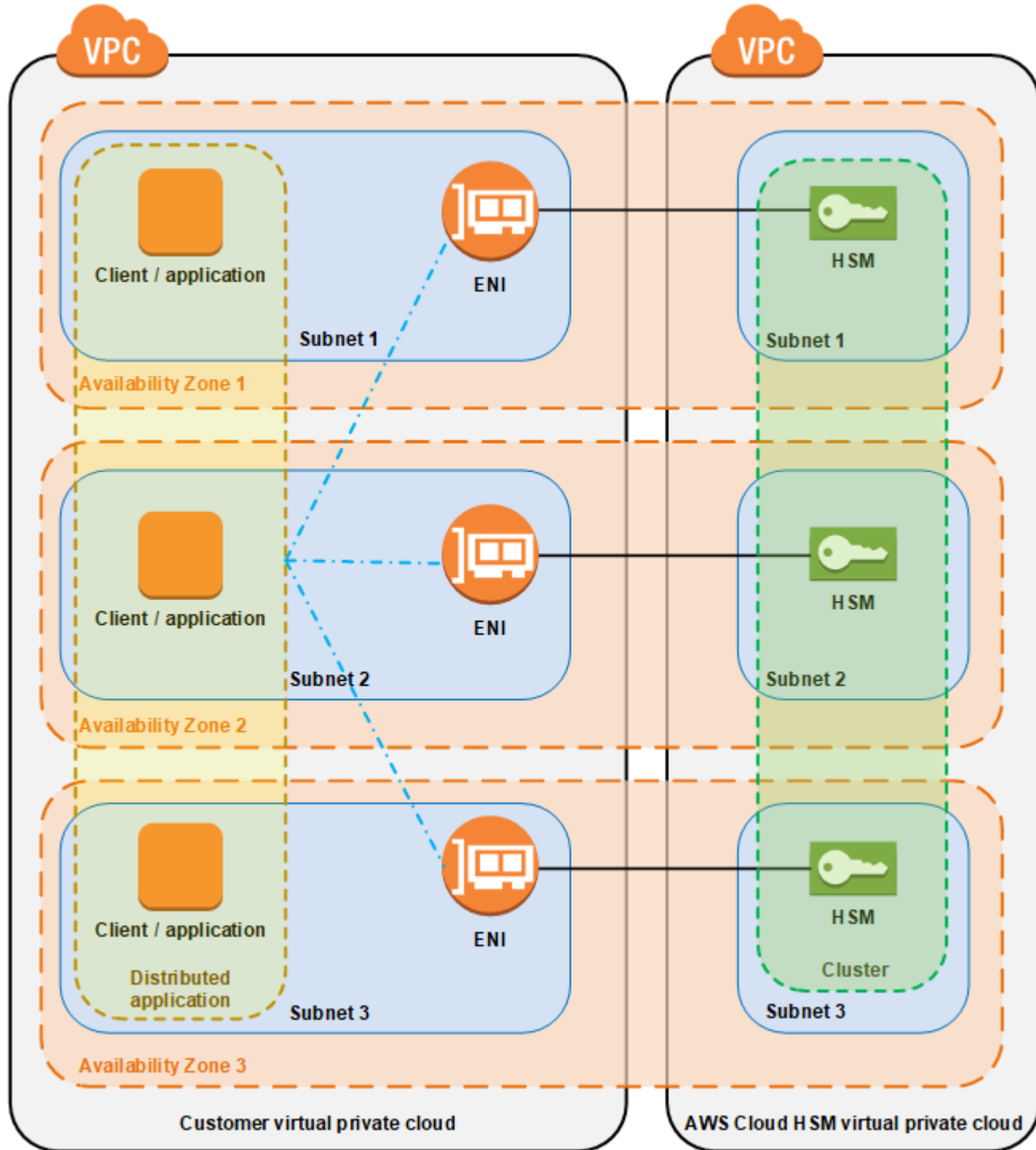
When you create a cluster, you specify an Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) in your AWS account and one or more subnets in that VPC. We recommend that you create one subnet in each Availability Zone (AZ) in your chosen AWS Region. To learn how, see [Create Private Subnets \(p. 13\)](#) in the prerequisites section.

Each time you create an HSM, you specify the cluster and Availability Zone for the HSM. By putting the HSMs in different Availability Zones, you achieve redundancy and high availability in case one Availability Zone is unavailable.

When you create an HSM, AWS CloudHSM puts an elastic network interface (ENI) in the specified subnet in your AWS account. The elastic network interface is the interface for interacting with the HSM. The HSM resides in a separate VPC in an AWS account that is owned by AWS CloudHSM. The HSM and its corresponding network interface are in the same Availability Zone.

To interact with the HSMs in a cluster, you need the AWS CloudHSM client software. Typically you install the client on Amazon EC2 instances, known as *client instances*, that reside in the same VPC as the HSM ENIs, as shown in the following figure. That's not technically required though; you can install the client on any compatible computer, as long as it can connect to the HSM ENIs. The client communicates with the individual HSMs in your cluster through their ENIs.

The following figure represents an AWS CloudHSM cluster with three HSMs, each in a different Availability Zone in the VPC.



## Cluster Synchronization

In an AWS CloudHSM cluster, AWS CloudHSM keeps the keys on the individual HSMs in sync. You don't need to do anything to synchronize the keys on your HSMs. To keep the users and policies on each HSM in sync, update the AWS CloudHSM client configuration file before you [manage HSM users \(p. 96\)](#). For more information, see [Keep HSM Users In Sync \(p. 165\)](#).

When you add a new HSM to a cluster, AWS CloudHSM makes a backup of all keys, users, and policies on an existing HSM. It then restores that backup onto the new HSM. This keeps the two HSMs in sync.

If the HSMs in a cluster fall out of synchronization, AWS CloudHSM automatically resynchronizes them. To enable this, AWS CloudHSM uses the credentials of the [appliance user \(p. 9\)](#). This user exists on all HSMs provided by AWS CloudHSM and has limited permissions. It can get a hash of objects on the HSM and can extract and insert masked (encrypted) objects. AWS cannot view or modify your users or keys and cannot perform any cryptographic operations using those keys.

## Cluster High Availability and Load Balancing

When you create an AWS CloudHSM cluster with more than one HSM, you automatically get load balancing. Load balancing means that the [AWS CloudHSM client \(p. 7\)](#) distributes cryptographic operations across all HSMs in the cluster based on each HSM's capacity for additional processing.

When you create the HSMs in different AWS Availability Zones, you automatically get high availability. High availability means that you get higher reliability because no individual HSM is a single point of failure.

We recommend that you have a minimum of two HSMs in each cluster, with each HSM in different Availability Zones within an AWS Region.

## AWS CloudHSM Cluster Backups

AWS CloudHSM makes periodic backups of your cluster. You can't instruct AWS CloudHSM to make backups anytime that you want, but you can take certain actions that result in AWS CloudHSM making a backup. For more information, see the following topics.

When you add an HSM to a cluster that previously contained one or more active HSMs, AWS CloudHSM restores the most recent backup onto the new HSM. This means that you can use AWS CloudHSM to manage an HSM that you use infrequently. When you don't need to use the HSM, you can delete it, which triggers a backup. Later, when you need to use the HSM again, you can create a new HSM in the same cluster, effectively restoring your previous HSM.

You can also create a new cluster from an existing backup of a different cluster. You must create the new cluster in the same AWS Region that contains the existing backup.

### Topics

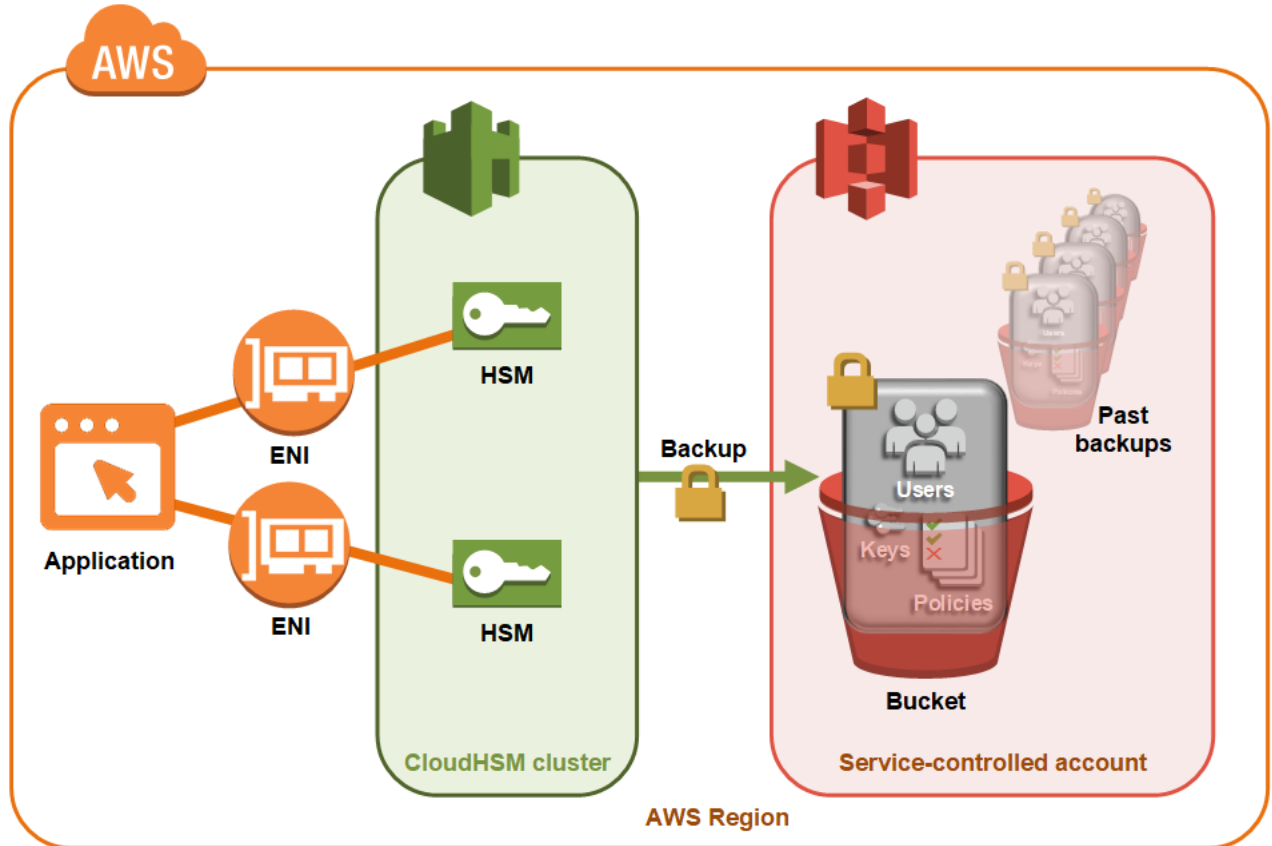
- [Overview of Backups \(p. 5\)](#)
- [Security of Backups \(p. 6\)](#)
- [Durability of Backups \(p. 7\)](#)
- [Frequency of Backups \(p. 7\)](#)

## Overview of Backups

Each backup contains encrypted copies of the following data:

- All [users \(COs, CUs, and AUs\)](#) (p. 9) on the HSM.
- All key material and certificates on the HSM.
- The HSM's configuration and policies.

AWS CloudHSM stores the backups in a service-controlled Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket in the same AWS Region as your cluster.



## Security of Backups

When AWS CloudHSM makes a backup from the HSM, the HSM encrypts all of its data before sending it to AWS CloudHSM. The data never leaves the HSM in plaintext form.

To encrypt its data, the HSM uses a unique, ephemeral encryption key known as the ephemeral backup key (EBK). The EBK is an AES 256-bit encryption key generated inside the HSM when AWS CloudHSM makes a backup. The HSM generates the EBK, then uses it to encrypt the HSM's data with a FIPS-approved AES key wrapping method that complies with [NIST special publication 800-38F](#). Then the HSM gives the encrypted data to AWS CloudHSM. The encrypted data includes an encrypted copy of the EBK.

To encrypt the EBK, the HSM uses another encryption key known as the persistent backup key (PBK). The PBK is also an AES 256-bit encryption key. To generate the PBK, the HSM uses a FIPS-approved key derivation function (KDF) in counter mode that complies with [NIST special publication 800-108](#). The inputs to this KDF include the following:

- A manufacturer key backup key (MKBK), permanently embedded in the HSM hardware by the hardware manufacturer.
- An AWS key backup key (AKBK), securely installed in the HSM when it's initially configured by AWS CloudHSM.

AWS CloudHSM can restore backups onto only AWS-owned HSMs made by the same manufacturer. Because each backup contains all users, keys, and configuration from the original HSM, the restored HSM contains the same protections and access controls as the original. The restored data overwrites all other data that might have been on the HSM prior to restoration.

A backup consists of only encrypted data. Before each backup is stored in Amazon S3, it's encrypted again under an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) customer master key (CMK).

## Durability of Backups

AWS CloudHSM stores cluster backups in an Amazon S3 bucket in an AWS account that AWS CloudHSM controls. The durability of backups is the same as any object stored in Amazon S3. Amazon S3 is designed to deliver 99.999999999% durability.

## Frequency of Backups

AWS CloudHSM makes a cluster backup at least once per 24 hours. In addition to recurring daily backups, AWS CloudHSM makes a backup when you perform any of the following actions:

- [Initialize the cluster \(p. 22\)](#).
- [Add an HSM to an initialized cluster \(p. 30\)](#).
- [Remove an HSM from a cluster \(p. 32\)](#).

# AWS CloudHSM Client Tools and Software Libraries

To manage and use the HSMs in your cluster, you use the AWS CloudHSM client software. The client software includes several components, as described in the following topics.

### Topics

- [AWS CloudHSM Client \(p. 7\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Command Line Tools \(p. 8\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Software Libraries \(p. 9\)](#)

## AWS CloudHSM Client

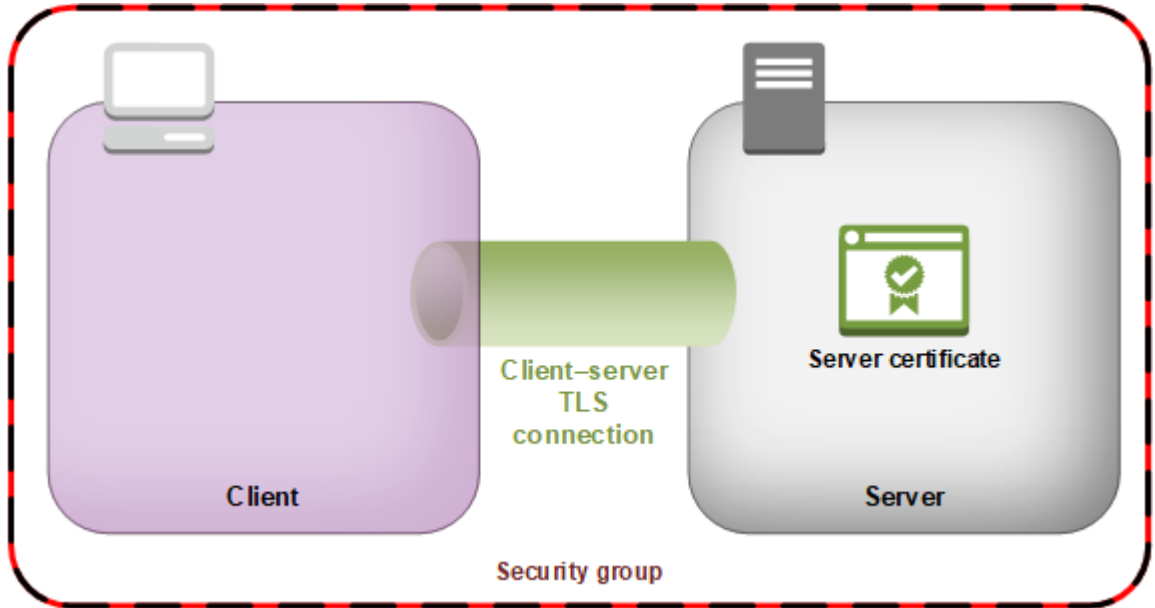
The AWS CloudHSM client is a daemon that you install and run on your application hosts. The client establishes and maintains a secure, end-to-end encrypted connection with the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster. The client provides the fundamental connection between your application hosts and your HSMs. Most of the other AWS CloudHSM client software components rely on the client to communicate with your HSMs. To get started with the AWS CloudHSM client, see [Install and Configure the Client \(p. 27\)](#).

## AWS CloudHSM Client End-to-End Encryption

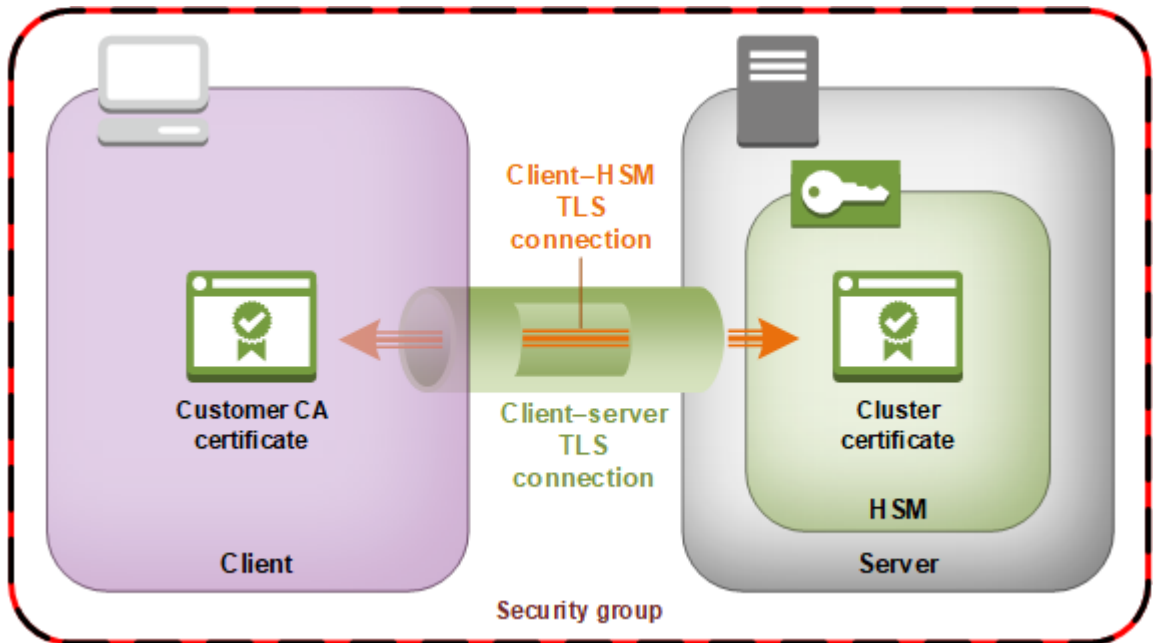
Communication between the AWS CloudHSM client and the HSMs in your cluster is encrypted from end to end. Only your client and your HSMs can decrypt the communication.

The following process explains how the client establishes end-to-end encrypted communication with an HSM.

1. Your client establishes a Transport Layer Security (TLS) connection with the server that hosts your HSM hardware. Your cluster's security group allows inbound traffic to the server only from client instances in the security group. The client also checks the server's certificate to ensure that it's a trusted server.



2. Next, the client establishes an encrypted connection with the HSM hardware. The HSM has the cluster certificate that you signed with your own certificate authority (CA), and the client has the CA's root certificate. Before the client-HSM encrypted connection is established, the client verifies the HSM's cluster certificate against its root certificate. The connection is established only when the client successfully verifies that the HSM is trusted. The client-HSM encrypted connection goes through the client-server connection established previously.



## AWS CloudHSM Command Line Tools

The AWS CloudHSM client software includes two command line tools. You use the command line tools to manage the users and keys on the HSMs. For example, you can create HSM users, change user passwords, create keys, and more. For information about these tools, see [Command Line Tools \(p. 39\)](#).

## AWS CloudHSM Software Libraries

You can use the AWS CloudHSM software libraries to integrate your applications with the HSMs in your cluster and use them for cryptoprocessing. For more information about installing and using the different libraries, see [Using the Software Libraries \(p. 117\)](#).

## HSM Users

Most operations that you perform on the HSM require the credentials of an *HSM user*. The HSM authenticates each HSM user by means of a user name and password.

Each HSM user has a *type* that determines which operations the user is allowed to perform on the HSM. The following topics explain the types of HSM users.

### Topics

- [Precrypto Officer \(PRECO\) \(p. 9\)](#)
- [Crypto Officer \(CO, PCO\) \(p. 9\)](#)
- [Crypto User \(CU\) \(p. 9\)](#)
- [Appliance User \(AU\) \(p. 9\)](#)
- [HSM User Permissions Table \(p. 10\)](#)

## Precrypto Officer (PRECO)

The precrypto officer (PRECO) is a temporary user that exists only on the first HSM in an AWS CloudHSM cluster. The first HSM in a new cluster contains a PRECO user with a default user name and password. To [activate a cluster \(p. 28\)](#), you log in to the HSM and change the PRECO user's password. When you change the password, the PRECO user becomes a crypto officer (PCO). The PRECO user can only change its own password and perform read-only operations on the HSM.

## Crypto Officer (CO, PCO)

A crypto officer (CO) can perform user management operations. For example, a CO can create and delete users and change user passwords. For more information, see the [HSM User Permissions Table \(p. 10\)](#).

When you [activate a new cluster \(p. 28\)](#), the first user on an HSM changes from a [Precrypto Officer \(p. 9\) \(PRECO\)](#) to a primary Crypto Officer (PCO). The PCO is the first CO created on the HSM. However, the PCO has the same permissions on the HSM as any other CO.

## Crypto User (CU)

A crypto user (CU) can perform the following key management and cryptographic operations.

- **Key management** – Create, delete, share, import, and export cryptographic keys.
- **Cryptographic operations** – Use cryptographic keys for encryption, decryption, signing, verifying, and more.

For more information, see the [HSM User Permissions Table \(p. 10\)](#).

## Appliance User (AU)

The appliance user (AU) can perform cloning and synchronization operations. AWS CloudHSM uses the AU to synchronize the HSMs in an AWS CloudHSM cluster. The AU exists on all HSMs provided by

AWS CloudHSM, and has limited permissions. For more information, see the [HSM User Permissions Table \(p. 10\)](#).

AWS uses the AU to perform cloning and synchronization operations on your cluster's HSMs. AWS cannot perform any operations on your HSMs except those granted to the AU and unauthenticated users. AWS cannot view or modify your users or keys and cannot perform any cryptographic operations using those keys.

## HSM User Permissions Table

The following table lists HSM operations and whether each type of HSM user can perform them.

	<b>Crypto Officer (CO)</b>	<b>Crypto User (CU)</b>	<b>Appliance User (AU)</b>	<b>Unauthenticated user</b>
Get basic cluster info <sup>1</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Zeroize an HSM <sup>2</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Change own password	Yes	Yes	Yes	Not applicable
Change any user's password	Yes	No	No	No
Add, remove users	Yes	No	No	No
Get sync status <sup>3</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Extract, insert masked objects <sup>4</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Create, share, delete keys	No	Yes	No	No
Encrypt, decrypt	No	Yes	No	No
Sign, verify	No	Yes	No	No
Generate digests and HMACs	No	Yes	No	No

<sup>1</sup>Basic cluster information includes the number of HSMs in the cluster and each HSM's IP address, model, serial number, device ID, firmware ID, etc.

<sup>2</sup>When an HSM is zeroized, all keys, certificates, and other data on the HSM is destroyed. You can use your cluster's security group to prevent an unauthenticated user from zeroizing your HSM. For more information, see [Create a Cluster \(p. 14\)](#).

<sup>3</sup>The user can get a set of digests (hashes) that correspond to the keys on the HSM. An application can compare these sets of digests to understand the synchronization status of HSMs in a cluster.

<sup>4</sup>Masked objects are keys that are encrypted before they leave the HSM. They cannot be decrypted outside of the HSM. They are only decrypted after they are inserted into an HSM that is in the same cluster as the HSM from which they were extracted. An application can extract and insert masked objects to synchronize the HSMs in a cluster.

# Getting Started with AWS CloudHSM: Create A Cluster

This section gives you a hands-on introduction to AWS CloudHSM. Complete the following steps to set up and configure an AWS CloudHSM cluster with one HSM.

## To get started with AWS CloudHSM

1. Follow the steps in [Set Up the Prerequisites \(p. 11\)](#) to prepare your environment.
2. Follow the steps in [Create a Cluster and HSM \(p. 13\)](#).
3. (Optional) Follow the steps in [\(Optional\) Verify HSM Identity \(p. 16\)](#) to verify the identity and authenticity of the cluster's HSM.
4. Follow the steps in [Initialize the Cluster \(p. 22\)](#).
5. (First time only) Follow the steps in [Launch a Client Instance \(p. 25\)](#).
6. (First time only) Follow the steps in [Install and Configure the Client \(p. 27\)](#).
7. Follow the steps in [Activate the Cluster \(p. 28\)](#).

After you complete these steps, you're ready to manage the HSM's users and use the cluster's HSM. For more information, see [Managing HSM Users \(p. 96\)](#) and [Using the Software Libraries \(p. 117\)](#).

For information about managing your cluster, see [Managing Clusters \(p. 30\)](#).

## Getting Started with AWS CloudHSM: Set up the Necessary Prerequisites

Complete the steps in the following topics to set up your AWS environment for use with AWS CloudHSM.

### Topics

- [Create an IAM User \(p. 11\)](#)
- [Create a Virtual Private Cloud \(VPC\) \(p. 13\)](#)
- [Create Private Subnets \(p. 13\)](#)

## Create an IAM User

As a [best practice](#), don't use your AWS account root user to interact with AWS, including AWS CloudHSM. Instead, use AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) to create an IAM user, IAM role, or federated user. If you don't have one already, complete the following steps to create an IAM user for yourself and give that user administrative permissions.

### To create an IAM user for yourself and add the user to an Administrators group

1. Use your AWS account email address and password to sign in to the [AWS Management Console](#) as the [AWS account root user](#).
2. In the navigation pane of the console, choose **Users**, and then choose **Add user**.
3. For **User name**, type **Administrator**.

4. Select the check box next to **AWS Management Console access**, select **Custom password**, and then type the new user's password in the text box. You can optionally select **Require password reset** to force the user to select a new password the next time the user signs in.
5. Choose **Next: Permissions**.
6. On the **Set permissions for user** page, choose **Add user to group**.
7. Choose **Create group**.
8. In the **Create group** dialog box, type **Administrators**.
9. For **Filter**, choose **Job function**.
10. In the policy list, select the check box for **AdministratorAccess**. Then choose **Create group**.
11. Back in the list of groups, select the check box for your new group. Choose **Refresh** if necessary to see the group in the list.
12. Choose **Next: Review** to see the list of group memberships to be added to the new user. When you are ready to proceed, choose **Create user**.

You can use this same process to create more groups and users, and to give your users access to your AWS account resources. To learn about using policies to restrict users' permissions to specific AWS resources, go to [Access Management](#) and [Example Policies](#).

To sign in to the AWS Management Console with your IAM user, you need your AWS account ID or alias. To get these items, see [Your AWS Account ID and Its Alias](#) in the *IAM User Guide*.

## Restrict User Permissions to What's Necessary for AWS CloudHSM

The steps in the preceding section explain how to create an IAM user with administrative permissions in your AWS account. To restrict the user's permissions to only those necessary for using AWS CloudHSM, remove the user from the AdministratorAccess group. Then add the user to a group that you created for AWS CloudHSM administrators. The following example policy contains the minimum set of permissions that AWS CloudHSM administrators need to manage AWS CloudHSM resources.

These permissions include full access to the AWS CloudHSM API and also some additional permissions in Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2). When you perform certain actions with the AWS CloudHSM console or API, AWS CloudHSM takes additional actions on your behalf to manage certain Amazon EC2 resources. For example, this can occur when you create and delete clusters and HSMs.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": {
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "cloudhsm:*",
      "ec2:CreateNetworkInterface",
      "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
      "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute",
      "ec2:DetachNetworkInterface",
      "ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface",
      "ec2:CreateSecurityGroup",
      "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress",
      "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress",
      "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress",
      "ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups",
      "ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup",
      "ec2:CreateTags",
      "ec2:DescribeVpcs",
      "ec2:DescribeSubnets",
      "iam:CreateServiceLinkedRole"
    ]
  }
}
```

```
    ],  
    "Resource": "*"    
  }  
}
```

## Create a Virtual Private Cloud (VPC)

If you don't already have an Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC), create one now.

### To create a VPC

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. On the navigation bar, use the region selector to choose one of the [AWS Regions where AWS CloudHSM is currently supported](#).
3. Choose **Start VPC Wizard**.
4. Choose the first option, **VPC with a Single Public Subnet**. Then choose **Select**.
5. For **VPC name**, type an identifiable name such as **CloudHSM**. For **Subnet name**, type an identifiable name such as **CloudHSM public subnet**. Leave all other options set to their defaults. Then choose **Create VPC**. After the VPC is created, choose **OK**.

## Create Private Subnets

Create a private subnet (a subnet with no internet gateway attached) for each Availability Zone where you want to create an HSM. Creating a private subnet in each Availability Zone provides the most robust configuration for high availability.

### To create the private subnets in your VPC

1. Open the Amazon VPC console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/vpc/>.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Subnets**. Then choose **Create Subnet**.
3. In the **Create Subnet** dialog box, do the following:
  - a. For **Name tag**, type an identifiable name such as **CloudHSM private subnet**.
  - b. For **VPC**, choose the VPC that you created previously.
  - c. For **Availability Zone**, choose the first Availability Zone in the list.
  - d. For **CIDR block**, type the CIDR block to use for the subnet. If you used the default values for the VPC in the previous procedure, then type **10.0.1.0/28**.

Choose **Yes, Create**.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to create subnets for each remaining Availability Zone in the region. For the subnet CIDR blocks, you can use 10.0.2.0/28, 10.0.3.0/28, and so on.

After you create a VPC and private subnets, proceed to [Create a Cluster and HSM \(p. 13\)](#).

## Getting Started with AWS CloudHSM: Create a Cluster and HSM

Complete the steps in the following topics to create an AWS CloudHSM cluster and the cluster's first HSM.

## Topics

- [Create a Cluster \(p. 14\)](#)
- [Create an HSM \(p. 15\)](#)

# Create a Cluster

When you create a cluster, AWS CloudHSM creates a security group for the cluster on your behalf. This security group controls network access to the HSMs in the cluster. It allows inbound connections only from Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances that are in the security group. By default, the security group doesn't contain any instances. Later, you [launch a client instance \(p. 25\)](#) and add it to this security group.

### Warning

The cluster's security group prevents unauthorized access to your HSMs. Anyone that can access instances in the security group can access your HSMs. Most operations require a user to log in to the HSM, but it's possible to zeroize HSMs without authentication, which destroys the key material, certificates, and other data. If this happens, data created or modified after the most recent backup is lost and unrecoverable. To prevent this, ensure that only trusted administrators can access the instances in the cluster's security group or modify the security group.

You can create a cluster from the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To create a cluster (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. On the navigation bar, use the region selector to choose one of the [AWS Regions where AWS CloudHSM is currently supported](#).
3. Choose **Create cluster**.
4. In the **Cluster configuration** section, do the following:
  - a. For **VPC**, select the VPC that you created when you [set up the prerequisites \(p. 11\)](#).
  - b. For **AZ(s)**, next to each Availability Zone, choose the private subnet that you created when you [set up the prerequisites \(p. 11\)](#).
5. Choose **Next: Review**.
6. Review your cluster configuration, then choose **Create cluster**.

### To create a cluster (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the `create-cluster` command. Specify the HSM instance type and the subnet IDs of the subnets where you plan to create HSMs. Use the subnet IDs of the private subnets that you created when you [set up the prerequisites \(p. 11\)](#). Specify only one subnet per Availability Zone.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 create-cluster --hsm-type hsm1.medium \  
                                --subnet-ids <subnet ID 1> <subnet ID 2> <subnet ID N>  
{  
  "Cluster": {  
    "BackupPolicy": "DEFAULT",  
    "VpcId": "vpc-50ae0636",  
    "SubnetMapping": {  
      "us-west-2b": "subnet-49a1bc00",  
      "us-west-2c": "subnet-6f950334",  
      "us-west-2a": "subnet-fd54af9b"  
    }  
  }  
}
```

```
    },  
    "SecurityGroup": "sg-6cb2c216",  
    "HsmType": "hsm1.medium",  
    "Certificates": {},  
    "State": "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS",  
    "Hsms": [],  
    "ClusterId": "cluster-igklspoj5v",  
    "CreateTimestamp": 1502423370.069  
  }  
}
```

### To create a cluster (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a [CreateCluster](#) request. Specify the HSM instance type and the subnet IDs of the subnets where you plan to create HSMs. Use the subnet IDs of the private subnets that you created when you [set up the prerequisites \(p. 11\)](#). Specify only one subnet per Availability Zone.

## Create an HSM

Before you can create an HSM in the cluster, the cluster must be in the uninitialized state. To determine the cluster's state, view the [clusters page in the AWS CloudHSM console](#), use the AWS CLI to issue the [describe-clusters](#) command, or send a [DescribeClusters](#) request in the AWS CloudHSM API.

You can create an HSM from the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS CLI](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To create an HSM (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose **Initialize** next to the cluster that you created previously.
3. Choose an Availability Zone (AZ) for the HSM that you are creating. Then choose **Create**.

### To create an HSM (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the [create-hsm](#) command. Specify the cluster ID of the cluster that you created previously and an Availability Zone for the HSM. Specify the Availability Zone in the form of `us-west-2a`, `us-west-2b`, etc.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 create-hsm --cluster-id <cluster ID> --availability-zone <Availability  
Zone>  
{  
  "Hsm": {  
    "HsmId": "hsm-ted36yp5b2x",  
    "EniIp": "10.0.1.12",  
    "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",  
    "ClusterId": "cluster-igklspoj5v",  
    "EniId": "eni-5d7ade72",  
    "SubnetId": "subnet-fd54af9b",  
    "State": "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS"  
  }  
}
```

### To create an HSM (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a [CreateHsm](#) request. Specify the cluster ID of the cluster that you created previously and an Availability Zone for the HSM.

After you create a cluster and HSM, you can optionally [verify the identity of the HSM \(p. 16\)](#), or proceed directly to [Initialize the Cluster \(p. 22\)](#).

## (Optional) Verify the Identity and Authenticity of Your Cluster's HSM

To initialize your cluster, you sign a certificate signing request (CSR) generated by the cluster's first HSM. Before you do this, you might want to verify the identity and authenticity of the HSM. This process is optional.

### Topics

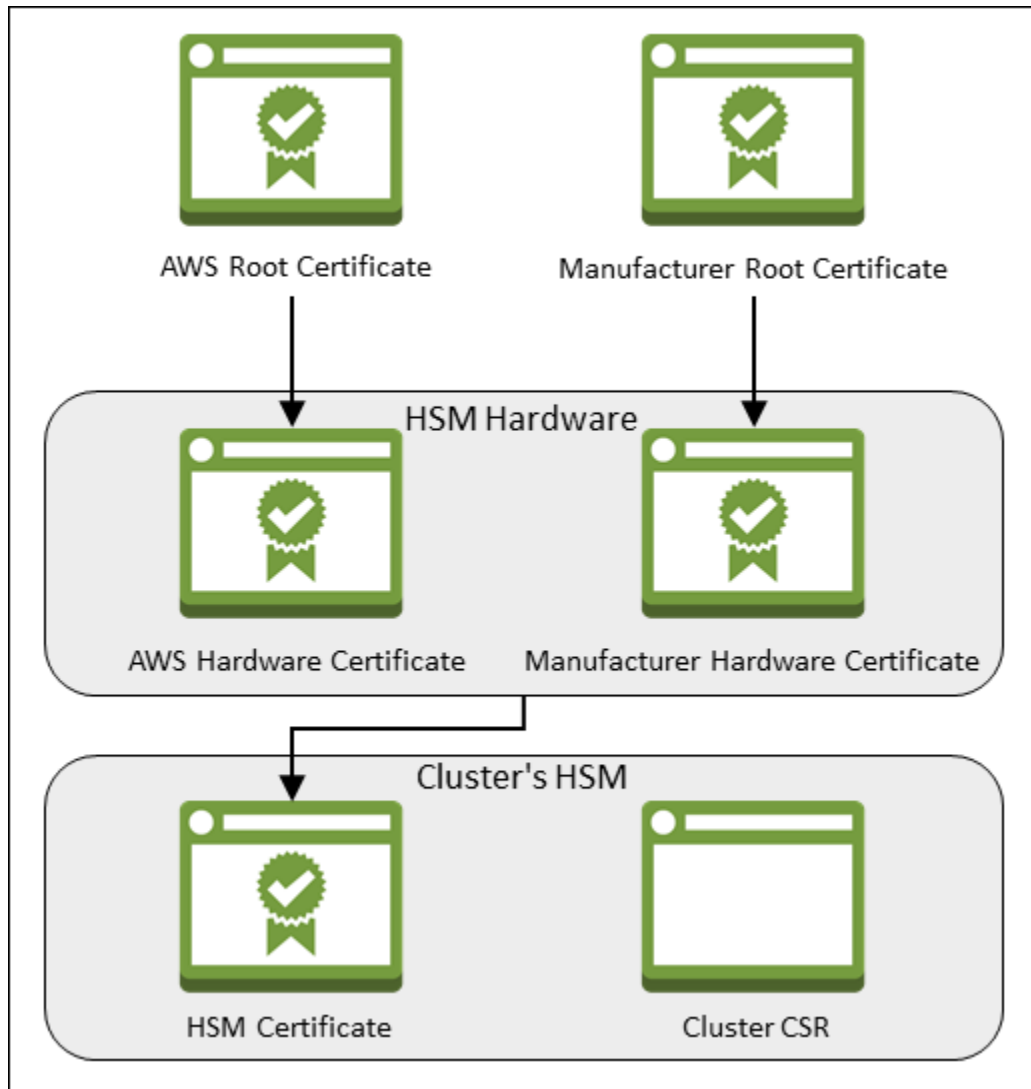
- [Overview \(p. 16\)](#)
- [Get Certificates from the HSM \(p. 18\)](#)
- [Verify Certificate Chains \(p. 19\)](#)
- [Extract and Compare Public Keys \(p. 20\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Root Certificate \(p. 20\)](#)

## Overview

To verify the identity of your cluster's first HSM, complete the following steps:

1. [Get the certificates and CSR \(p. 18\)](#) – In this step, you get three certificates and a CSR from the HSM. You also get two root certificates, one from AWS CloudHSM and one from the HSM hardware manufacturer.
2. [Verify the certificate chains \(p. 19\)](#) – In this step, you construct two certificate chains, one to the AWS CloudHSM root certificate and one to the manufacturer root certificate. Then you verify the HSM certificate with these certificate chains to determine that AWS CloudHSM and the hardware manufacturer both attest to the identity and authenticity of the HSM.
3. [Compare public keys \(p. 20\)](#) – In this step, you extract and compare the public keys in the HSM certificate and the cluster CSR, to ensure that they are the same. This should give you confidence that the CSR was generated by an authentic, trusted HSM.

The following diagram shows the CSR, the certificates, and their relationship to each other. The subsequent list defines each certificate.



### **AWS Root Certificate**

This is AWS CloudHSM's root certificate. You can view and download this certificate at <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/latest/userguide/root-certificate.html> (p. 20).

### **Manufacturer Root Certificate**

This is the hardware manufacturer's root certificate. You can view and download this certificate at <https://www.cavium.com/LS/TAmanuCert/>.

### **AWS Hardware Certificate**

AWS CloudHSM created this certificate when it claimed the HSM hardware. Your cluster's HSM is a virtual device that runs on specialized, FIPS-validated hardware. This certificate asserts that AWS CloudHSM owns the hardware.

### **Manufacturer Hardware Certificate**

The HSM hardware manufacturer created this certificate when it manufactured the HSM hardware. This certificate asserts that the manufacturer created the hardware.

### HSM Certificate

The HSM hardware created this certificate was it created the cluster's virtual HSM device. This certificate asserts that the HSM hardware created the virtual HSM.

### Cluster CSR

The virtual HSM device created this CSR. To initialize and claim your cluster, you sign this CSR.

## Get Certificates from the HSM

To verify the identity and authenticity of your HSM, start by getting a CSR and five certificates. You get three of the certificates from the HSM, which you can do with the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To get the CSR and HSM certificates (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose **Initialize** next to the cluster that you created previously.
3. When the certificates and CSR are ready, you see links to download them.

### Download certificate signing request

To initialize the cluster, you must download a certificate signing request (CSR) and then sign it. You may also verify the authenticity of your cluster using the certificates below. [Learn More](#)

[Cluster CSR](#)  
[HSM certificate](#)  
[AWS certificate](#)  
[Manufacturer certificate](#)

[Cancel](#) [Next](#)

Choose each link to download the CSR and certificates, saving each file.

### To get the CSR and HSM certificates (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the [describe-clusters](#) command four times, extracting the CSR and different certificates each time and saving them to files.
  - a. Issue the following command to extract the cluster CSR. Replace `<cluster ID>` with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 describe-clusters --filters clusterIds=<cluster ID> \  
--output text \  
--query 'Clusters[].Certificates.ClusterCsr' \  
> <cluster ID>_ClusterCsr.csr
```

- b. Issue the following command to extract the HSM certificate. Replace `<cluster ID>` with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 describe-clusters --filters clusterIds=<cluster ID> \
--output text \
--query 'Clusters[].Certificates.HsmCertificate' \
\
> <cluster ID>_HsmCertificate.crt
```

- c. Issue the following command to extract the AWS hardware certificate. Replace *<cluster ID>* with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 describe-clusters --filters clusterIds=<cluster ID> \
--output text \
--query \
'Clusters[].Certificates.AwsHardwareCertificate' \
> <cluster ID>_AwsHardwareCertificate.crt
```

- d. Issue the following command to extract the manufacturer hardware certificate. Replace *<cluster ID>* with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 describe-clusters --filters clusterIds=<cluster ID> \
--output text \
--query \
'Clusters[].Certificates.ManufacturerHardwareCertificate' \
> <cluster ID>_ManufacturerHardwareCertificate.crt
```

### To get the CSR and HSM certificates (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a [DescribeClusters](#) request, then extract and save the CSR and certificates from the response.

## Get the Root Certificates

Follow these steps to get the root certificates for AWS CloudHSM and the manufacturer.

### To get the AWS CloudHSM and manufacturer root certificates

1. Go to <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/latest/userguide/root-certificate.html> (p. 20), and then choose **AWS\_CloudHSM\_Root-G1.zip**. After you download the file, extract (unzip) its contents.
2. Go to <https://www.cavium.com/LS/TAmanuCert/>, and then choose **Download Certificate**. You might need to right-click the **Download Certificate** link and then choose **Save Link As...** to save the certificate file.

## Verify Certificate Chains

Construct two certificate chains, one to the AWS CloudHSM root certificate and one to the manufacturer root certificate. Then use OpenSSL to verify the HSM certificate with each certificate chain.

### To verify the HSM certificate with the AWS CloudHSM root certificate

1. Use the following command to create a certificate chain that includes the AWS hardware certificate and the AWS CloudHSM root certificate, in that order. Replace *<cluster ID>* with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ cat <cluster ID>_AwsHardwareCertificate.crt \
AWS_CloudHSM_Root-G1.crt \
```

```
> <cluster ID>_AWS_chain.crt
```

2. Use the following OpenSSL command to verify the HSM certificate with the AWS certificate chain. Replace `<cluster ID>` with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ openssl verify -CAfile <cluster ID>_AWS_chain.crt <cluster ID>_HsmCertificate.crt  
<cluster ID>_HsmCertificate.crt: OK
```

### To verify the HSM certificate with the manufacturer root certificate

1. Use the following command to create a certificate chain that includes the manufacturer hardware certificate and the manufacturer root certificate, in that order. Replace `<cluster ID>` with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ cat <cluster ID>_ManufacturerHardwareCertificate.crt \  
    cavium_cert.crt \  
> <cluster ID>_manufacturer_chain.crt
```

2. Use the following OpenSSL command to verify the HSM certificate with the manufacturer certificate chain. Replace `<cluster ID>` with the ID of the cluster that you created previously.

```
$ openssl verify -CAfile <cluster ID>_manufacturer_chain.crt <cluster  
ID>_HsmCertificate.crt  
<cluster ID>_HsmCertificate.crt: OK
```

## Extract and Compare Public Keys

Use OpenSSL to extract and compare the public keys in the HSM certificate and the cluster CSR, to ensure that they are the same.

### To extract and compare the public keys

1. Use the following command to extract the public key from the HSM certificate.

```
$ openssl x509 -in <cluster ID>_HsmCertificate.crt -pubkey -noout > <cluster  
ID>_HsmCertificate.pub
```

2. Use the following command to extract the public key from the cluster CSR.

```
$ openssl req -in <cluster ID>_ClusterCsr.csr -pubkey -noout > <cluster  
ID>_ClusterCsr.pub
```

3. Use the following command to compare the public keys. If the public keys are identical, the following command produces no output.

```
$ diff <cluster ID>_HsmCertificate.pub <cluster ID>_ClusterCsr.pub
```

After you verify the identity and authenticity of the HSM, proceed to [Initialize the Cluster \(p. 22\)](#).

## AWS CloudHSM Root Certificate

Download the AWS CloudHSM root certificate: [AWS\\_CloudHSM\\_Root-G1.zip](#).

AWS CloudHSM User Guide  
AWS CloudHSM Root Certificate

```
Certificate:
Data:
  Version: 3 (0x2)
  Serial Number: 17952736724058547791 (0xf924eeeecf9ea64f)
Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
  Issuer: C=US,
         ST=Virginia,
         L=Herndon,
         O=Amazon Web Services INC.,
         OU=CloudHSM,
         CN=AWS CloudHSM Root G1
Validity
  Not Before: Apr 28 08:37:46 2017 GMT
  Not After : Apr 26 08:37:46 2027 GMT
Subject: C=US,
         ST=Virginia,
         L=Herndon,
         O=Amazon Web Services INC.,
         OU=CloudHSM,
         CN=AWS CloudHSM Root G1
Subject Public Key Info:
  Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
  Public-Key: (2048 bit)
  Modulus:
    00:c8:e3:f6:2a:e0:1f:1e:66:73:00:1e:57:dc:3e:
    69:f1:9b:73:73:24:58:60:85:80:45:99:a2:85:3f:
    e7:f9:67:41:9f:39:d2:e8:e1:88:ec:18:07:5c:38:
    98:25:5a:45:5f:1f:c4:60:0e:29:e4:ac:65:f0:b6:
    92:83:34:62:1a:e7:c6:ae:0f:40:66:52:bb:0b:6a:
    c6:78:27:57:d6:32:3b:6c:0a:83:7d:a7:e9:a1:6c:
    10:46:27:74:2c:6e:86:3a:fd:71:18:1f:84:8e:00:
    84:bb:00:dc:57:d8:48:94:5c:13:7a:ff:3b:37:52:
    60:cd:5a:64:57:35:95:df:67:68:39:e2:f9:85:ad:
    59:ee:a6:9a:97:75:35:f4:e1:32:08:d3:0e:2f:bc:
    33:04:f3:34:e8:c9:b5:18:fd:69:83:e0:b7:5a:b4:
    3f:ce:1c:2f:b5:1e:0f:4f:15:f0:27:00:23:67:d5:
    b8:2c:cb:d6:ef:eb:34:25:80:28:33:fa:e6:3a:31:
    58:7a:0b:fd:4f:6d:d3:1c:64:10:47:8c:4f:ab:e3:
    61:0c:a2:a9:0b:2d:e6:59:f4:1c:2c:92:2a:a4:f9:
    a4:83:21:3a:66:dc:c7:75:06:15:fe:83:9d:f8:25:
    7f:3b:66:e8:aa:9f:d1:e5:ba:1d:5a:c5:2e:21:ee:
    52:61
  Exponent: 65537 (0x10001)
X509v3 extensions:
  X509v3 Subject Key Identifier:
    27:00:6B:50:D5:4F:38:8A:35:21:38:D3:0D:A9:5E:D2:10:39:A4:EB
  X509v3 Authority Key Identifier:
    keyid:27:00:6B:50:D5:4F:38:8A:35:21:38:D3:0D:A9:5E:D2:10:39:A4:EB

  X509v3 Basic Constraints:
    CA:TRUE
Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption
  71:ff:e5:46:27:9c:d0:85:97:5e:c0:82:9a:d4:1b:48:96:75:
  2a:40:32:07:80:95:c5:eb:26:1b:46:37:7e:86:12:99:68:b1:
  15:bb:f5:55:85:6f:a2:e4:28:70:47:73:07:84:fc:12:28:cc:
  8b:3e:b8:f6:60:85:bb:23:6a:cb:6e:a7:ed:82:7e:ed:64:9c:
  c1:df:c8:51:db:b9:a4:76:ee:ba:53:aa:e7:30:86:74:5e:be:
  2f:1a:c1:88:30:c4:61:02:50:9f:c9:80:7b:7e:f5:1e:49:c8:
  6c:1a:39:00:4d:98:1e:21:26:4a:02:f5:d5:3e:6c:47:d9:9c:
  94:6f:d7:25:2e:1d:7c:a3:18:ee:8a:32:8a:15:f3:85:39:76:
  c3:b9:ba:4e:58:0c:5b:65:44:2e:eb:ab:6c:27:9a:a6:67:df:
  22:d4:81:02:2e:c6:34:1b:fe:55:31:8b:d5:73:57:d8:0e:0d:
  5a:27:7d:ce:3d:3b:84:80:b3:32:00:e0:6a:f0:32:8a:85:2a:
  f8:de:20:bf:65:f7:c9:a8:42:c9:cb:fa:03:d4:10:29:5e:25:
  63:a5:71:06:2e:72:78:8a:05:c3:f9:56:e9:b1:e4:2b:6e:f7:
```

```
46:5d:b3:12:ed:14:2a:51:d4:56:56:48:ab:7d:fe:d6:49:af:
d6:8e:84:62
```

## Getting Started with AWS CloudHSM: Initialize the Cluster

Complete the steps in the following topics to initialize your AWS CloudHSM cluster.

### Topics

- [Get the Cluster's Certificate Signing Request \(CSR\) \(p. 22\)](#)
- [Sign the CSR \(p. 23\)](#)
- [Initialize the Cluster \(p. 24\)](#)

## Get the Cluster's Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

Before you can initialize the cluster, you get (and then later sign) a certificate signing request (CSR) that is generated by the cluster's first HSM. If you followed the steps to [verify the identity of your cluster's HSM \(p. 16\)](#), you already have the CSR and you can proceed to [sign the CSR \(p. 23\)](#). Otherwise, get the CSR now by using the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#), or the [AWS CloudHSM API](#).

### To get the CSR (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose **Initialize** next to the cluster that you [created previously \(p. 13\)](#).
3. When the CSR is ready, you see a link to download it.

### Download certificate signing request

To initialize the cluster, you must download a certificate signing request (CSR) and then sign it. You may also verify the authenticity of your cluster using the certificates below. [Learn More](#)

[Cluster CSR](#)  
[HSM certificate](#)  
[AWS certificate](#)  
[Manufacturer certificate](#)

Cancel

Next

Choose **Cluster CSR** to download and save the CSR.

### To get the CSR (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, run the following `describe-clusters` command, which extracts the CSR and saves it to a file. Replace `<cluster ID>` with the ID of the cluster that you [created previously](#) (p. 13).

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 describe-clusters --filters clusterIds=<cluster ID> \  
    --output text \  
    --query 'Clusters[].Certificates.ClusterCsr' \  
> <cluster ID>_ClusterCsr.csr
```

### To get the CSR (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a `DescribeClusters` request, then extract and save the CSR from the response.

## Sign the CSR

To sign the cluster's CSR, you typically use a private certificate authority (CA). Your CA signs the CSR, which creates a signed certificate. Then you provide the signed certificate and your CA's issuing certificate to initialize the cluster.

If you don't have a CA, you can use the following OpenSSL commands to create a self-signed certificate and use it as your issuing certificate.

#### Important

The following example is a proof-of-concept demonstration only. For production systems, use a more secure method (such as a CA) to sign the CSR.

The certificate that you use is not designed to be rotated. It demonstrates that you extended trust to this cluster by signing the cluster certificate. We recommend that you create and use a certificate that is valid for ten years.

### To sign the cluster's CSR (OpenSSL)

1. Use the following command to create a private key.

```
$ openssl genrsa -aes256 -out customerCA.key 2048  
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus  
.....+++  
.....+++  
e is 65537 (0x10001)  
Enter pass phrase for customerCA.key:  
Verifying - Enter pass phrase for customerCA.key:
```

2. Use the following command to create a self-signed issuing certificate with the private key that you created in the previous step. The certificate is valid for 10 years (3652 days). Read the on-screen instructions and follow the prompts to provide identifying information for the issuing certificate.

```
$ openssl req -new -x509 -days 3652 -key customerCA.key -out customerCA.crt  
Enter pass phrase for customerCA.key:  
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated  
into your certificate request.  
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.  
There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank  
For some fields there will be a default value,  
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.  
-----  
Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:
```

```
State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:
Locality Name (eg, city) []:
Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:
Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:
Common Name (e.g. server FQDN or YOUR name) []:
Email Address []:
```

When completed, this command creates a file named `customerCA.crt`. Use this file as your issuing certificate (trust anchor) when you initialize the cluster.

3. Sign the cluster's CSR with your issuer. Replace `<cluster ID>` with the ID of the cluster that you created previously. This signature is also valid for 10 years.

```
$ openssl x509 -req -days 3652 -in <cluster ID>_ClusterCsr.csr \
    -CA customerCA.crt \
    -CAkey customerCA.key \
    -CAcreateserial \
    -out <cluster ID>_CustomerHsmCertificate.crt

Signature ok
subject=/C=US/ST=CA/O=Cavium/OU=N3FIPS/L=SanJose/CN=HSM:<HSM
  identifier>;PARTN:<partition number>, for FIPS mode
Getting CA Private Key
Enter pass phrase for customerCA.key:
```

This command creates a file named `<cluster ID>_CustomerHsmCertificate.crt`. Use this file as the signed certificate when you initialize the cluster.

## Initialize the Cluster

To initialize your cluster, you provide the signed HSM certificate and your issuing certificate (trust anchor). You can initialize your cluster with the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS CLI](#), or the [AWS CloudHSM API](#).

### To initialize a cluster (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose **Initialize** next to the cluster that you created previously.
3. On the **Download certificate signing request** page, choose **Next**. If **Next** is not available, first choose one of the CSR or certificate links. Then choose **Next**.
4. On the **Sign certificate signing request (CSR)** page, choose **Next**.
5. On the **Upload the certificates** page, do the following:
  - a. Next to **Cluster certificate**, choose **Upload file**. Then select the HSM certificate that you signed previously. If you completed the steps in the previous section, select the file named `<cluster ID>_CustomerHsmCertificate.crt`.
  - b. Next to **Issuing certificate**, choose **Upload file**. Then select your CA's issuing certificate. If you completed the steps in the previous section, select the file named `customerCA.crt`.

If you used a CA to issue the cluster certificate, provide a certificate chain that begins with the certificate that issued the cluster certificate and ends with the CA's root certificate. The certificate chain must be in PEM format and can contain a maximum of 5000 characters.
  - c. Choose **Upload and initialize**.

### To initialize a cluster (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the `initialize-cluster` command. Provide the following:

- The ID of the cluster that you created previously.
- The HSM certificate that you signed previously. If you completed the steps in the previous section, it's saved in a file named `<cluster ID>_CustomerHsmCertificate.crt`.
- Your CA's issuing certificate. If you completed the steps in the previous section, it's saved in a file named `customerCA.crt`.

If you used a CA to issue the cluster certificate, provide a certificate chain that begins with the certificate that issued the cluster certificate and ends with the CA's root certificate. The certificate chain must be in PEM format and can contain a maximum of 5000 characters.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 initialize-cluster --cluster-id <cluster ID> \  
--signed-cert file://<cluster  
ID>_CustomerHsmCertificate.crt \  
--trust-anchor file://customerCA.crt  
{  
  "State": "INITIALIZE_IN_PROGRESS",  
  "StateMessage": "Cluster is initializing. State will change to INITIALIZED upon  
completion."  
}
```

#### To initialize a cluster (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send an [InitializeCluster](#) request with the following:
  - The ID of the cluster that you created previously.
  - The HSM certificate that you signed previously.
  - Your CA's issuing certificate.

After you initialize the cluster, proceed to [Launch a Client Instance \(p. 25\)](#).

## Getting Started with AWS CloudHSM: Launch a Client Instance and Add the Cluster Security Group

Complete the following steps to create an Amazon EC2 instance, known as a client instance. Later you install and configure the AWS CloudHSM client software, which you use to access your cluster from the client instance.

#### Important

Make sure that you assign the cluster's security group, named `cloudhsm-<cluster ID>-sg`, to your client instance as described in the following procedure. If you don't, you won't be able to connect to your cluster from the client instance.

Ensure that only trusted administrators can access this client instance and all instances in the cluster's security group. For more information, see the warning in [Create a Cluster \(p. 14\)](#).

#### Topics

- [Launching a Client Instance \(p. 26\)](#)
- [Connecting to Your Client Instance \(p. 27\)](#)

## Launching a Client Instance

Complete the following steps to launch a client instance.

### To launch a client instance

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/>.
2. On the navigation bar, choose the AWS Region where you [created your cluster \(p. 13\)](#).
3. Choose **Launch Instance**.
4. In the row for the newest **Amazon Linux AMI**, choose **Select**.
5. Select an instance type, and then choose **Next: Configure Instance Details**.
6. For **Step 3: Configure Instance Details**, do the following:
  - a. For **Network**, choose the [VPC that you created previously \(p. 13\)](#).
  - b. For **Subnet**, choose the [public subnet that you created previously \(p. 13\)](#).
  - c. For **Auto-assign Public IP**, choose **Enable**.
  - d. Change the remaining instance details as preferred. Then choose **Next: Add Storage**.
7. Change the storage settings as preferred. Then choose **Next: Add Tags**.
8. Add tags as preferred. Then choose **Next: Configure Security Group**.
9. For **Step 6: Configure Security Group**, do the following:
  - a. For **Assign a security group**, choose **Select an existing security group**.
  - b. Select the check box next to the security group named **cloudhsm-*<cluster ID>*-sg**. AWS CloudHSM created this security group on your behalf when you [created the cluster \(p. 14\)](#). You must choose this security group to allow the client instance to connect to the HSMs in the cluster.
  - c. Select the check box next to a security group that allows inbound SSH traffic from your network. That is, the security group must allow inbound TCP traffic on port 22. Otherwise, you cannot connect to your client instance. If you don't have a security group like this, you must create one and then assign it to your client instance later. For more information about creating a security group, see [Create a Security Group](#) in the *Amazon VPC Getting Started Guide*.

Then choose **Review and Launch**.

10. Review your instance details, and then choose **Launch**.
11. Choose whether to launch your instance with an existing key pair or create a new key pair.
  - To use an existing key pair, do the following:
    1. Choose **Choose an existing key pair**.
    2. For **Select a key pair**, choose the key pair to use.
    3. Select the check box next to **I acknowledge that I have access to the selected private key file (*private key file name*.pem), and that without this file, I won't be able to log into my instance**.
  - To create a new key pair, do the following:
    1. Choose **Create a new key pair**.
    2. For **Key pair name**, type an identifiable key pair name such as **CloudHSM client instance key pair**.
    3. Choose **Download Key Pair** and save the private key file in a secure and accessible location.

### Warning

You cannot download the private key file again after this point. If you do not download the private key file now, you will be unable to access the client instance.

Then choose **Launch Instances**.

## Connecting to Your Client Instance

When the client instance is running, you can connect to it using SSH. For more information, see one of the following topics.

- If your computer's operating system is Linux or Apple macOS, see [Connecting to Your Linux Instance Using SSH](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.
- If your computer's operating system is Microsoft Windows, see [Connecting to Your Linux Instance from Windows Using PuTTY](#) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

After you connect to your client instance, proceed to [Install and Configure the Client](#) (p. 27).

# Getting Started with AWS CloudHSM: Install and Configure the Client

To interact with the HSM in your AWS CloudHSM cluster, you need the AWS CloudHSM client software. We recommend that you install it on [the client instance that you created previously](#) (p. 25).

### Topics

- [Install the AWS CloudHSM Client and Command Line Tools](#) (p. 27)
- [Edit the Client Configuration](#) (p. 27)

## Install the AWS CloudHSM Client and Command Line Tools

Complete the steps in the following procedure to install the AWS CloudHSM client and command line tools.

### To install (or update) the client and command line tools

1. If you haven't already done so, connect to the client instance that you [created previously](#) (p. 25). You can do this [using SSH \(Linux or macOS\)](#) or [from Windows using PuTTY](#).
2. Use the following commands to download and then install the client and command line tools.

```
$ wget https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

```
$ sudo yum install -y ./cloudhsm-client-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

## Edit the Client Configuration

Before you can use the AWS CloudHSM client to connect to your cluster, you must edit the client configuration.

### To edit the client configuration

1. Copy your issuing certificate—the one that you used to sign the cluster's certificate (p. 23)—to the following location on the client instance: `/opt/cloudhsm/etc/customerCA.crt`. You need root permissions on the client instance to copy your certificate to this location.
2. Use the following command to update the configuration files for the AWS CloudHSM client and command line tools, specifying the IP address of the HSM in your cluster. If you don't know the HSM's IP address, view your cluster in the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), or use the AWS CLI to issue the `describe-clusters` command. In the command's output, the HSM's IP address is the value of the `EniIp` field. If you have more than one HSM, choose the IP address for any of the HSMs; it doesn't matter which one.

```
$ sudo /opt/cloudhsm/bin/configure -a <IP address>
Inserting '<IP address>' into '/opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_client.cfg'
Inserting '<IP address>' into '/opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg'
```

After you install and configure the AWS CloudHSM client, proceed to [Activate the Cluster \(p. 28\)](#).

## Getting Started with AWS CloudHSM: Activate the Cluster

When you activate an AWS CloudHSM cluster, the cluster's state changes from initialized to active. You can then [manage the HSM's users \(p. 96\)](#) and [use the HSM \(p. 117\)](#).

To activate the cluster, you log in to the HSM with the credentials of the HSM's [precrypto officer \(PRECO\) user \(p. 9\)](#). Then you change the user's default password, which makes the user a crypto officer (CO).

### To activate a cluster

1. If you haven't already done so, connect to the client instance that you [created previously \(p. 25\)](#). You can do this [using SSH \(Linux or macOS\)](#) or [from Windows using PuTTY](#).
2. Use the following command to start the AWS CloudHSM `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` (p. 39) command line tool.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/cloudhsm_mgmt_util /opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg
```

3. Use the `enable_e2e` command to enable end-to-end encryption.

```
aws-cloudhsm>enable_e2e
E2E enabled on server 0(server1)
```

4. (Optional) Use the `listUsers` command to display the existing users.

```
aws-cloudhsm>listUsers
Users on server 0(server1):
Number of users found:2

  User Id      User Type      User Name      MofnPubKey
  LoginFailureCnt  2FA
    1          PRECO         admin          NO
    0          NO
    2          AU            app_user       NO
    0          NO
```

5. Use the **loginHSM** command to log in to the HSM as the [precrypto officer \(PRECO\)](#) (p. 9) user.

```
aws-cloudhsm>loginHSM PRECO admin password
loginHSM success on server 0(server1)
```

6. Use the **changePswd** command to change the precrypto officer (PRECO) user's password.

```
aws-cloudhsm>changePswd PRECO admin <NewPassword>
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Changing password for admin(PRECO) on 1 nodes
```

We recommend that you write down the new password on a password worksheet. Do not lose the worksheet. We recommend that you print a copy of the password worksheet, use it to record your critical HSM passwords, and then store it in a secure place. We also recommended that you store a copy of this worksheet in secure off-site storage.

7. (Optional) Use the **listUsers** command to verify that the user's type changed to (primary) [crypto officer \(PCO\)](#) (p. 9).

```
aws-cloudhsm>listUsers
Users on server 0(server1):
Number of users found:2
```

User Id	User Type	User Name	MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt	2FA		
1	PCO	admin	NO
0	NO		
2	AU	app_user	NO
0	NO		

8. Use the **quit** command to stop the cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util tool.

```
aws-cloudhsm>quit
```

# Managing AWS CloudHSM Clusters

You can manage your AWS CloudHSM clusters from the [AWS CloudHSM console](#) or one of the [AWS SDKs or command line tools](#). For more information, see the following topics.

To create a cluster, see [Getting Started: Create A Cluster \(p. 11\)](#).

## Topics

- [Adding or Removing HSMs in an AWS CloudHSM Cluster \(p. 30\)](#)
- [Deleting an AWS CloudHSM Cluster \(p. 33\)](#)
- [Creating an AWS CloudHSM Cluster from a Previous Backup \(p. 34\)](#)
- [Tagging AWS CloudHSM Resources \(p. 35\)](#)

## Adding or Removing HSMs in an AWS CloudHSM Cluster

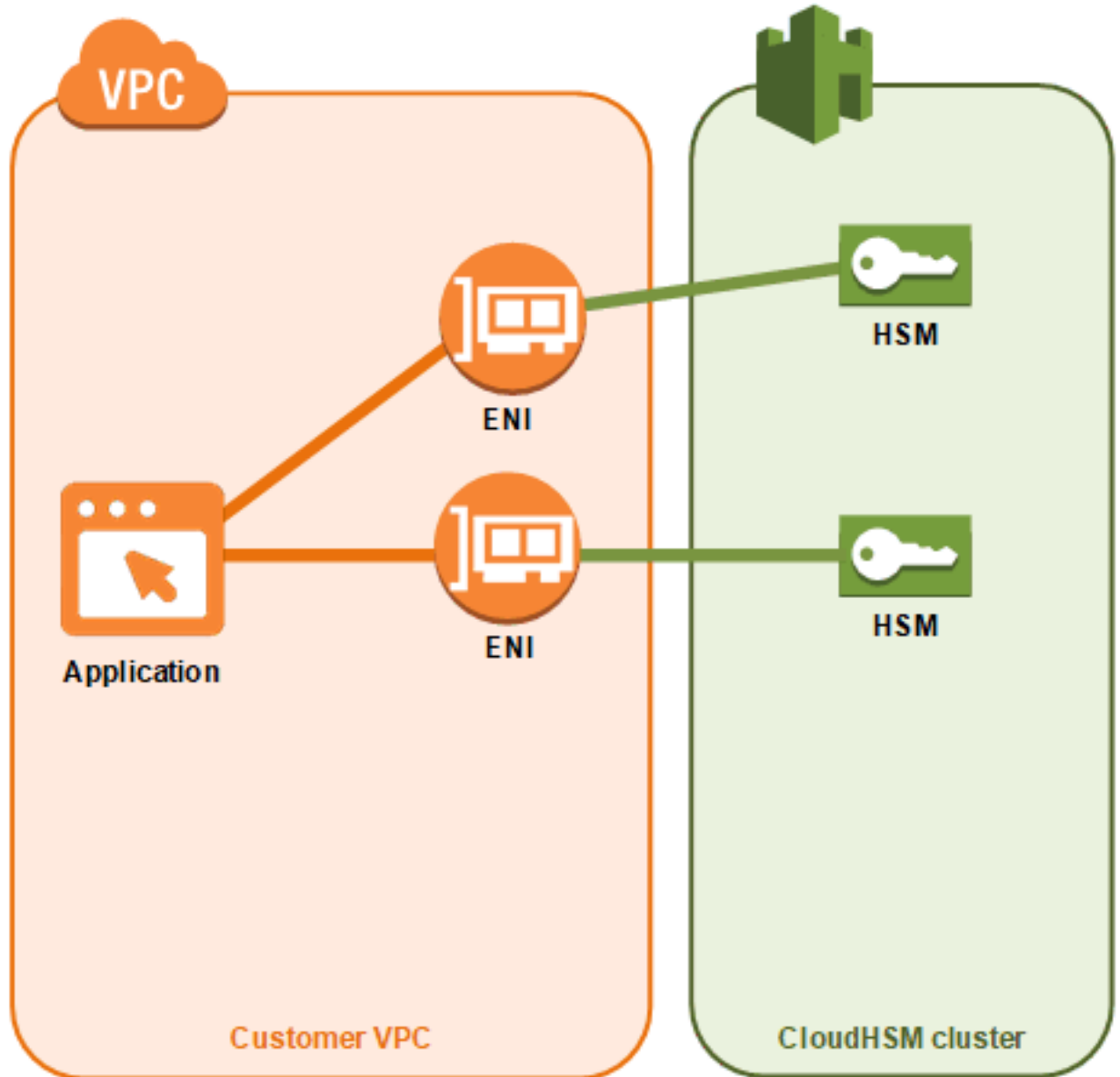
To scale up or down your AWS CloudHSM cluster, add or remove HSMs by using the [AWS CloudHSM console](#) or one of the [AWS SDKs or command line tools](#).

## Topics

- [Adding an HSM \(p. 30\)](#)
- [Removing an HSM \(p. 32\)](#)

## Adding an HSM

The following figure illustrates the events that occur when you add an HSM to a cluster.



1. You add a new HSM to a cluster. The following procedures explain how to do this from the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#), and the [AWS CloudHSM API](#).

This is the only action that you take. The remaining events occur automatically.

2. AWS CloudHSM makes a backup copy of an existing HSM in the cluster. For more information, see [Backups \(p. 5\)](#).
3. AWS CloudHSM restores the backup onto the new HSM. This ensures that the HSM is in sync with the others in the cluster.
4. The existing HSMs in the cluster notify the AWS CloudHSM client that there's a new HSM in the cluster.
5. The client establishes a connection to the new HSM.

### To add an HSM (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose a cluster for the HSM that you are adding.
3. On the **HSMs** tab, choose **Create HSM**.
4. Choose an Availability Zone (AZ) for the HSM that you are creating. Then choose **Create**.

### To add an HSM (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the `create-hsm` command, specifying a cluster ID and an Availability Zone for the HSM that you are creating. If you don't know the cluster ID of your preferred cluster, issue the `describe-clusters` command. Specify the Availability Zone in the form of `us-east-2a`, `us-east-2b`, etc.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 create-hsm --cluster-id <cluster ID> --availability-zone <Availability Zone>
{
  "Hsm": {
    "State": "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS",
    "ClusterId": "cluster-5a73d5qzrdh",
    "HsmId": "hsm-1gavqitns2a",
    "SubnetId": "subnet-0e358c43",
    "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-2c",
    "EniId": "eni-bab18892",
    "EniIp": "10.0.3.10"
  }
}
```

### To add an HSM (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a `CreateHsm` request, specifying the cluster ID and an Availability Zone for the HSM that you are creating.

## Removing an HSM

You can remove an HSM by using the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS CLI](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To remove an HSM (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose the cluster that contains the HSM that you are removing.
3. On the **HSMs** tab, choose the HSM that you are removing. Then choose **Delete HSM**.
4. Confirm that you want to delete the HSM. Then choose **Delete**.

### To remove an HSM (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the `delete-hsm` command. Pass the ID of the cluster that contains the HSM that you are deleting and one of the following HSM identifiers:
  - The HSM ID (`--hsm-id`)
  - The HSM IP address (`--eni-ip`)
  - The HSM's elastic network interface ID (`--eni-id`)

If you don't know the values for these identifiers, issue the [describe-clusters](#) command.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 delete-hsm --cluster-id <cluster ID> --eni-ip <HSM IP address>
{
  "HsmId": "hsm-lgavqitns2a"
}
```

### To remove an HSM (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a [DeleteHsm](#) request, specifying the cluster ID and an identifier for the HSM that you are deleting.

## Deleting an AWS CloudHSM Cluster

Before you can delete a cluster, you must remove all HSMs from the cluster. For more information, see [Removing an HSM \(p. 32\)](#).

After you remove all HSMs, you can delete a cluster by using the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To delete a cluster (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose the cluster that you are deleting. Then choose **Delete cluster**.
3. Confirm that you want to delete the cluster, then choose **Delete**.

### To delete a cluster (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the [delete-cluster](#) command, passing the ID of the cluster that you are deleting. If you don't know the cluster ID, issue the [describe-clusters](#) command.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 delete-cluster --cluster-id <cluster ID>
{
  "Cluster": {
    "Certificates": {
      "ClusterCertificate": "<certificate string>"
    },
    "SourceBackupId": "backup-rtq2dwi2gq6",
    "SecurityGroup": "sg-40399d28",
    "CreateTimestamp": 1504903546.035,
    "SubnetMapping": {
      "us-east-2a": "subnet-f1d6e798",
      "us-east-2c": "subnet-0e358c43",
      "us-east-2b": "subnet-40ed9d3b"
    },
    "ClusterId": "cluster-kdmrayrc7gi",
    "VpcId": "vpc-641d3c0d",
    "State": "DELETE_IN_PROGRESS",
    "HsmType": "hsm1.medium",
    "StateMessage": "The cluster is being deleted.",
    "Hsms": [],
    "BackupPolicy": "DEFAULT"
  }
}
```

### To delete a cluster (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a [DeleteCluster](#) request, specifying the ID of the cluster that you are deleting.

## Creating an AWS CloudHSM Cluster from a Previous Backup

To restore an AWS CloudHSM cluster from a previous backup, you create a new cluster, specifying the backup to restore. After you create the cluster, you don't need to initialize or activate it. You can just add an HSM to the cluster; this HSM contains the same users, key material, certificates, configuration, and policies that were in the backup that you restored. For more information about backups, see [Backups \(p. 5\)](#).

You can restore a cluster from a backup from the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To create a cluster from a previous backup (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose **Create cluster**.
3. In the **Cluster configuration** section, do the following:
  - a. For **VPC**, choose a VPC for the cluster that you are creating.
  - b. For **AZ(s)**, choose a private subnet for each Availability Zone that you are adding to the cluster.
4. In the **Cluster source** section, do the following:
  - a. Choose **Restore cluster from existing backup**.
  - b. Choose the backup that you are restoring.
5. Choose **Next: Review**.
6. Review your cluster configuration, then choose **Create cluster**.

### To create a cluster from a previous backup (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the [create-cluster](#) command. Specify the HSM instance type, the subnet IDs of the subnets where you plan to create HSMs, and the backup ID of the backup that you are restoring. If you don't know the backup ID, issue the [describe-backups](#) command.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 create-cluster --hsm-type hsm1.medium \  
                                --subnet-ids <subnet ID 1> <subnet ID 2> <subnet ID N> \  
                                --source-backup-id <backup ID> \  
{  
  "Cluster": {  
    "HsmType": "hsm1.medium",  
    "VpcId": "vpc-641d3c0d",  
    "Hsms": [],  
    "State": "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS",  
    "SourceBackupId": "backup-rtq2dwi2gq6",  
    "BackupPolicy": "DEFAULT",  
    "SecurityGroup": "sg-640fab0c",  
    "CreateTimestamp": 1504907311.112,  
    "SubnetMapping": {  
      "us-east-2c": "subnet-0e358c43",  
      "us-east-2a": "subnet-f1d6e798",  
      "us-east-2b": "subnet-40ed9d3b"    }  
  }  
}
```

```
    },  
    "Certificates": {  
      "ClusterCertificate": "<certificate string>"  
    },  
    "ClusterId": "cluster-jxhlf7644ne"  
  }  
}
```

### To create a cluster from a previous backup (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a [CreateCluster](#) request. Specify the HSM instance type, the subnet IDs of the subnets where you plan to create HSMs, and the backup ID of the backup that you are restoring.

To create an HSM that contains the same users, key material, certificates, configuration, and policies that were in the backup that you restored, [add an HSM \(p. 30\)](#) to the cluster.

## Tagging AWS CloudHSM Resources

A tag is a label that you assign to an AWS resource. You can assign tags to your AWS CloudHSM clusters. Each tag consists of a tag key and a tag value, both of which you define. For example, the tag key might be **Cost Center** and the tag value might be **12345**. Tag keys must be unique for each cluster.

You can use tags for a variety of purposes. One common use is to categorize and track your AWS costs. You can apply tags that represent business categories (such as cost centers, application names, or owners) to organize your costs across multiple services. When you add tags to your AWS resources, AWS generates a cost allocation report with usage and costs aggregated by tags. You can use this report to view your AWS CloudHSM costs in terms of projects or applications, instead of viewing all AWS CloudHSM costs as a single line item.

For more information about using tags for cost allocation, see [Using Cost Allocation Tags](#) in the *AWS Billing and Cost Management User Guide*.

You can use the [AWS CloudHSM console](#) or one of the [AWS SDKs](#) or [command line tools](#) to add, update, list, and remove tags.

### Topics

- [Adding or Updating Tags \(p. 35\)](#)
- [Listing Tags \(p. 37\)](#)
- [Removing Tags \(p. 37\)](#)

## Adding or Updating Tags

You can add or update tags from the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To add or update tags (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose the cluster that you are tagging.
3. Choose **Tags**.
4. To add a tag, do the following:
  - a. Choose **Add Tag**.

- b. For **Tag Key**, type a key for the tag.
- c. (Optional) For **Tag Value**, type a value for the tag.
- d. Choose the action for adding a tag, as shown in the following image.

The screenshot shows the AWS CloudHSM console interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: HSMs, Backups, Monitoring, Tags (selected), and Certificates. Below the tabs is a table with three columns: Tag Key, Tag Value, and Action. The first row contains the text 'Cost Center' in the Tag Key column, '12345' in the Tag Value column, and a checkmark icon in the Action column. The checkmark icon is circled in red. Below the table is an 'Add Tag' button.

5. To update a tag, do the following:
  - a. Choose the tag value to update.

**Note**

If you update the tag key for an existing tag, the console deletes the existing tag and creates a new one.

- b. Type the new tag value. Then choose the action for updating a tag, as shown in the following image.

The screenshot shows the AWS CloudHSM console interface. At the top, there are navigation tabs: HSMs, Backups, Monitoring, Tags (selected), and Certificates. Below the tabs is a table with three columns: Tag Key, Tag Value, and Action. The first row contains the text 'Cost Center' in the Tag Key column, '98765' in the Tag Value column, and a checkmark icon with a red 'x' over it in the Action column. The checkmark icon is circled in red. Below the table is an 'Add Tag' button.

**To add or update tags (AWS CLI)**

1. At a command prompt, issue the **tag-resource** command, specifying the tags and the ID of the cluster that you are tagging. If you don't know the cluster ID, issue the **describe-clusters** command.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 tag-resource --resource-id <cluster ID> \
                             --tag-list Key="<tag key>",Value="<tag value>"
```

2. To update tags, use the same command but specify an existing tag key. When you specify a new tag value for an existing tag, the tag is overwritten with the new value.

### To add or update tags (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send a [TagResource](#) request. Specify the tags and the ID of the cluster that you are tagging.

## Listing Tags

You can list tags for a cluster from the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS CLI](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To list tags (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose the cluster whose tags you are listing.
3. Choose **Tags**.

### To list tags (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the [list-tags](#) command, specifying the ID of the cluster whose tags you are listing. If you don't know the cluster ID, issue the [describe-clusters](#) command.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 list-tags --resource-id <cluster ID>
{
  "TagList": [
    {
      "Key": "Cost Center",
      "Value": "12345"
    }
  ]
}
```

### To list tags (AWS CloudHSM API)

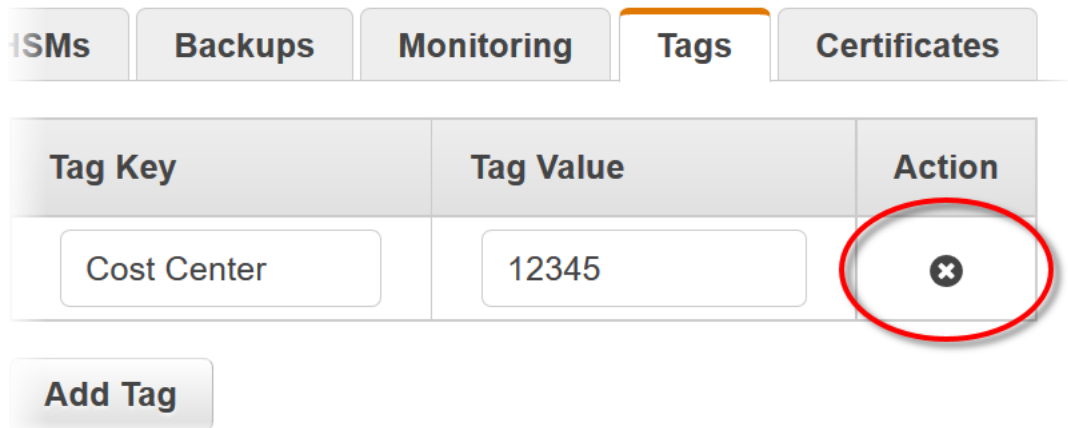
- Send a [ListTags](#) request, specifying the ID of the cluster whose tags you are listing.

## Removing Tags

You can remove tags from a cluster by using the [AWS CloudHSM console](#), the [AWS CLI](#), or the AWS CloudHSM API.

### To remove tags (console)

1. Open the AWS CloudHSM console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudhsm/>.
2. Choose the cluster whose tags you are removing.
3. Choose **Tags**.
4. Next to the tag that you are removing, choose the action for deleting a tag, as shown in the following image.



#### To remove tags (AWS CLI)

- At a command prompt, issue the [untag-resource](#) command, specifying the tag keys of the tags that you are removing and the ID of the cluster whose tags you are removing. When you use the AWS CLI to remove tags, specify only the tag keys, not the tag values.

```
$ aws cloudhsmv2 untag-resource --resource-id <cluster ID> \  
                                --tag-key-list "<tag key>"
```

#### To remove tags (AWS CloudHSM API)

- Send an [UntagResource](#) request in the AWS CloudHSM API, specifying the ID of the cluster and the tags that you are removing.

# AWS CloudHSM Command Line Tools

AWS CloudHSM provides command line tools for managing and using AWS CloudHSM.

## Topics

- [Getting Started with cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 39\)](#)
- [key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 42\)](#)

## Manage Clusters and HSMs

These tools get, create, delete, and tag AWS CloudHSM clusters and HSMs:

- [CloudHSMv2 commands in AWS Command Line Interface \(AWS CLI\)](#). To use these commands, you need to [install](#) and [configure](#) AWS CLI.
- HSM2 PowerShell cmdlets in the [AWSPowerShell module](#). These cmdlets are available in a Windows PowerShell module and a cross-platform PowerShell Core module.

## Manage Users

This tool creates and deletes HSM users, including implementing quorum authentication of user management tasks:

- [cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 39\)](#). This tool is included in the AWS CloudHSM client software.

## Manage Keys

This tool creates, deletes, imports, and exports symmetric keys and asymmetric key pairs:

- [key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 42\)](#). This tool is included in the AWS CloudHSM client software.

## Helper Tools

These tools help you to use the tools and software libraries.

- [configure \(p. 27\)](#) updates your CloudHSM client configuration files.
- [pkpspeed \(p. 165\)](#) measures the performance of your HSM hardware independent of software libraries.

## Getting Started with cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util

AWS CloudHSM includes two command line tools with the AWS CloudHSM client software [that you installed previously \(p. 27\)](#). One of these tools is `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`. You use `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` primarily to [manage HSM users \(p. 96\)](#).

To use `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`, first [connect to your client instance \(p. 27\)](#) and then [install and configure the AWS CloudHSM client software \(p. 27\)](#). Then see the following topics to get started.

#### Topics

- [Setup cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 40\)](#)
- [Basic Usage of cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 40\)](#)

## Setup cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util

Complete the following setup before you use `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`. You need to do these steps the first time you use `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` and when you add or remove HSMs in your cluster.

#### Topics

- [Start the AWS CloudHSM Client \(p. 40\)](#)
- [Update the cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util Configuration File \(p. 40\)](#)

## Start the AWS CloudHSM Client

Before you use `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`, start the AWS CloudHSM client. The client is a daemon that establishes end-to-end encrypted communication with the HSMs in your cluster. When you add or remove HSMs in your cluster, the cluster informs the client of these changes. The client keeps the current list of HSMs in its configuration file, and `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` can use this file to get an updated list of the cluster's HSM.

#### To start the AWS CloudHSM client

Use the following command to start the AWS CloudHSM client.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

## Update the cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util Configuration File

After you start the AWS CloudHSM client as described in the previous section, you can update the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` configuration file to include all the HSMs in your cluster. If you don't do this, you might run into problems because [HSM users are not in sync across your cluster's HSMs \(p. 165\)](#).

Use the following command to update the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` configuration file.

```
$ sudo /opt/cloudhsm/bin/configure -m
```

## Basic Usage of cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util

See the following topics for the basic usage of the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` tool.

#### Note

The `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` tool doesn't support auto-completing commands with the **Tab** key. Don't use the **Tab** key with `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`, because that can make the tool unresponsive.

#### Topics

- [Start cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 41\)](#)
- [Enable End-to-End Encryption \(p. 41\)](#)
- [Log in to the HSMs \(p. 41\)](#)

- [Log Out from the HSMs \(p. 41\)](#)
- [Stop cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 42\)](#)

## Start cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util

Use the following command to start cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/cloudhsm_mgmt_util /opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg

Connecting to the server(s), it may take time
depending on the server(s) load, please wait...

Connecting to server '10.0.2.9': hostname '10.0.2.9', port 2225...
Connected to server '10.0.2.9': hostname '10.0.2.9', port 2225.

Connecting to server '10.0.3.11': hostname '10.0.3.11', port 2225...
Connected to server '10.0.3.11': hostname '10.0.3.11', port 2225.

Connecting to server '10.0.1.12': hostname '10.0.1.12', port 2225...
Connected to server '10.0.1.12': hostname '10.0.1.12', port 2225.
```

The prompt changes to `aws-cloudhsm>` when cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util is running.

## Enable End-to-End Encryption

Use the `enable_e2e` command to establish end-to-end encrypted communication between cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util and the HSMs in your cluster. You should enable end-to-end encryption each time you start cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util.

```
aws-cloudhsm>enable_e2e
E2E enabled on server 0(10.0.2.9)
E2E enabled on server 1(10.0.3.11)
E2E enabled on server 2(10.0.1.12)
```

## Log in to the HSMs

Use the `loginHSM` command to log in to the HSMs. The following command logs in as the default [crypto officer \(CO\) \(p. 9\)](#) named `admin`. You set this user's password when you [activated the cluster \(p. 28\)](#).

The output shows that the command logged the `admin` user in to all of the HSMs in the cluster.

```
aws-cloudhsm>loginHSM CO admin <password>
loginHSM success on server 0(10.0.2.9)
loginHSM success on server 1(10.0.3.11)
loginHSM success on server 2(10.0.1.12)
```

The following shows the syntax for the `loginHSM` command.

```
aws-cloudhsm>loginHSM <user type> <user name> <password>
```

## Log Out from the HSMs

Use the `logoutHSM` command to log out of the HSMs.

```
aws-cloudhsm>logoutHSM
```

```
logoutHSM success on server 0(10.0.2.9)
logoutHSM success on server 1(10.0.3.11)
logoutHSM success on server 2(10.0.1.12)
```

## Stop cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util

Use the **quit** command to stop cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util.

```
aws-cloudhsm>quit

disconnecting from servers, please wait...
```

# key\_mgmt\_util

AWS CloudHSM provides two command line tools with the AWS CloudHSM client software [that you installed previously \(p. 27\)](#). One of these tools is known as key\_mgmt\_util. You use key\_mgmt\_util primarily to [manage keys \(p. 99\)](#).

To use key\_mgmt\_util, first [connect to your client instance \(p. 27\)](#) and then [install and configure the AWS CloudHSM client software \(p. 27\)](#). Then see the following topics to get started.

### Topics

- [Getting Started with key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 42\)](#)
- [key\\_mgmt\\_util Command Reference \(p. 44\)](#)

## Getting Started with key\_mgmt\_util

The key\_mgmt\_util tool in AWS CloudHSM helps crypto users (CUs) create and [manage the keys \(p. 99\)](#) in the HSMs in a cluster. Before you can use key\_mgmt\_util, you need to [connect to your client instance \(p. 27\)](#) and then [install and configure the AWS CloudHSM client software \(p. 27\)](#). Then you can set up and begin to use key\_mgmt\_util.

### Topics

- [Set Up key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 42\)](#)
- [Basic Usage of key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#)

If you encounter an error message or unexpected outcome for any command, see the [Troubleshooting AWS CloudHSM \(p. 164\)](#) topics for help. For details about the key\_mgmt\_util commands, see [key\\_mgmt\\_util Command Reference \(p. 44\)](#)

## Set Up key\_mgmt\_util

Complete the following setup before you use key\_mgmt\_util.

### Start the AWS CloudHSM Client

Before you use key\_mgmt\_util, you must start the AWS CloudHSM client. The client is a daemon that establishes end-to-end encrypted communication with the HSMs in your cluster. The key\_mgmt\_util tool uses the client connection to communicate with the HSMs in your cluster. Without it, key\_mgmt\_util doesn't work.

### To start the AWS CloudHSM client

Use the following command to start the AWS CloudHSM client.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

### Start key\_mgmt\_util

After you start the AWS CloudHSM client, use the following command to start key\_mgmt\_util.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/key_mgmt_util
```

The prompt changes to `Command:` when key\_mgmt\_util is running.

If the command fails, such as returning a `Daemon socket connection error` message, try [updating your configuration file](#) (p. 164).

## Basic Usage of key\_mgmt\_util

See the following topics for the basic usage of the key\_mgmt\_util tool.

### Topics

- [Log In to the HSMs](#) (p. 43)
- [Log Out from the HSMs](#) (p. 43)
- [Stop key\\_mgmt\\_util](#) (p. 44)

### Log In to the HSMs

Use the **loginHSM** command to log in to the HSMs. The following command logs in as a [crypto user \(CU\)](#) (p. 9) named `example_user`. The output indicates a successful login for all three HSMs in the cluster.

```
Command: loginHSM -u CU -s example_user -p <password>
Cfm3LoginHSM returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

The following shows the syntax for the **loginHSM** command.

```
Command: loginHSM -u <user type> -s <username> -p <password>
```

### Log Out from the HSMs

Use the **logoutHSM** command to log out from the HSMs.

```
Command: logoutHSM
Cfm3LogoutHSM returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Stop key\_mgmt\_util

Use the **exit** command to stop key\_mgmt\_util.

```
Command: exit
```

## key\_mgmt\_util Command Reference

The **key\_mgmt\_util** command line tool helps you to manage keys in the HSMs in your cluster, including creating, deleting, and finding keys and their attributes. It includes multiple commands, each of which is described in detail in this topic. For a quick start, see [Getting Started with key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 42\)](#). For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

To list all key\_mgmt\_util commands, type:

```
Command: help
```

To get help for a particular key\_mgmt\_util command, type:

```
Command: <command-name> -h
```

For information about the cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util command line tool, which includes commands to manage the HSM and users in your cluster, see [Getting Started with cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 39\)](#).

For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

The following topics describe commands in key\_mgmt\_util.

Command	Description
<a href="#">aesWrapUnwrap (p. 45)</a>	Encrypts and decrypts the contents of a key in a file on disk.
<a href="#">deleteKey (p. 47)</a>	Deletes a key from the HSMs.
<a href="#">Error2String (p. 49)</a>	Gets the error that corresponds to a key_mgmt_util hexadecimal error code.
<a href="#">exSymKey (p. 50)</a>	Exports a plaintext copy of a symmetric key from the HSMs to a file on disk.
<a href="#">findKey (p. 55)</a>	Search for keys by key attribute value.
<a href="#">findSingleKey (p. 58)</a>	Verifies that a key exists on all HSMs in the cluster.
<a href="#">genDSAKeyPair (p. 59)</a>	Generates a <a href="#">Digital Signing Algorithm (DSA)</a> key pair in your HSMs.
<a href="#">genPBEKey (p. 63)</a>	(This command is not supported on the FIPS-validated HSMs.)
<a href="#">genRSAKeyPair (p. 63)</a>	Generates an <a href="#">RSA</a> asymmetric key pair in your HSMs.
<a href="#">genSymKey (p. 67)</a>	Generates a symmetric key in your HSMs

Command	Description
<a href="#">getAttribute (p. 73)</a>	Gets the attribute values for an AWS CloudHSM key and writes them to a file.
<a href="#">getKeyInfo (p. 76)</a>	Gets the HSM user IDs of users who can use the key.  If the key is quorum controlled, it gets the number of users in the quorum.
<a href="#">imSymKey (p. 78)</a>	Imports a plaintext copy of a symmetric key from a file into the HSM.
<a href="#">listAttributes (p. 84)</a>	Lists the attributes of an AWS CloudHSM key and the constants that represent them.
<a href="#">listUsers (p. 85)</a>	Gets the users in the HSMs, their user type and ID, and other attributes.
<a href="#">setAttribute (p. 86)</a>	Converts a session key to a persistent key.
<a href="#">unWrapKey (p. 88)</a>	Imports a wrapped (encrypted) key from a file into the HSMs.
<a href="#">wrapKey (p. 91)</a>	Exports an encrypted copy of a key from the HSM to a file on disk

## aesWrapUnwrap

The **aesWrapUnwrap** command encrypts or decrypts the contents of a file on disk. This command is designed to wrap and unwrap encryption keys, but you can use it on any file that contains less than 4 KB (4096 bytes) of data.

**aesWrapUnwrap** uses [AES Key Wrap](#). It uses an AES key on the HSM as the wrapping or unwrapping key. Then it writes the result to another file on disk.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a `crypto` user (CU).

### Syntax

```

aesWrapUnwrap -h

aesWrapUnwrap -m <wrap-unwrap mode>
                -f <file-to-wrap-unwrap>
                -w <wrapping-key-handle>
                [-i <wrapping-IV>]
                [-out <output-file>]

```

### Examples

These examples show how to use **aesWrapUnwrap** to encrypt and decrypt an encryption key in a file.

#### Example : Wrap an Encryption Key

This command uses **aesWrapUnwrap** to wrap a Triple DES symmetric key that was [exported from the HSM in plaintext \(p. 50\)](#) into the `3DES.key` file. You can use a similar command to wrap any key saved in a file.

The command uses the `-m` parameter with a value of 1 to indicate wrap mode. It uses the `-w` parameter to specify an AES key in the HSM (key handle 6) as the wrapping key. It writes the resulting wrapped key to the `3DES.key.wrapped` file.

The output shows that the command was successful and that the operation used the default IV, which is preferred.

```
Command: aesWrapUnwrap -f 3DES.key -w 6 -m 1 -out 3DES.key.wrapped

Warning: IV (-i) is missing.
        0xA6A6A6A6A6A6A6A6 is considered as default IV
result data:
49 49 E2 D0 11 C1 97 22
17 43 BD E3 4E F4 12 75
8D C1 34 CF 26 10 3A 8D
6D 0A 7B D5 D3 E8 4D C2
79 09 08 61 94 68 51 B7

result written to file 3DES.key.wrapped

Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Unwrap an Encryption Key

This example shows how to use `aesWrapUnwrap` to unwrap (decrypt) a wrapped (encrypted) key in a file. You might want to do an operation like this one before importing a key to the HSM. For example, if you try to use the `imSymKey` (p. 78) command to import an encrypted key, it returns an error because the encrypted key doesn't have the format that is required for a plaintext key of that type.

The command unwraps the key in the `3DES.key.wrapped` file and writes the plaintext to the `3DES.key.unwrapped` file. The command uses the `-m` parameter with a value of 0 to indicate unwrap mode. It uses the `-w` parameter to specify an AES key in the HSM (key handle 6) as the wrapping key. It writes the resulting wrapped key to the `3DES.key.unwrapped` file.

```
Command: aesWrapUnwrap -m 0 -f 3DES.key.wrapped -w 6 -out 3DES.key.unwrapped

Warning: IV (-i) is missing.
        0xA6A6A6A6A6A6A6A6 is considered as default IV
result data:
14 90 D7 AD D6 E4 F5 FA
A1 95 6F 24 89 79 F3 EE
37 21 E6 54 1F 3B 8D 62

result written to file 3DES.key.unwrapped

Cfm3UnWrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Parameters

### **-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### **-m**

Specifies the mode. To wrap (encrypt) the file content, type 1; to unwrap (decrypt) the file content, type 0.

Required: Yes

**-f**

Specifies the file to wrap. Enter a file that contains less than 4 KB (4096 bytes) of data. This operation is designed to wrap and unwrap encryption keys.

Required: Yes

**-w**

Specifies the wrapping key. Type the key handle of an AES key on the HSM. This parameter is required. To find key handles, use the [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) command.

To create a wrapping key, use [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) to create an AES key (type 31). To verify that a key can be used as a wrapping key, use [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) to get the value of the `OBJ_ATTR_WRAP` attribute, which is represented by constant 262.

**Note**

Key handle 4 represents an unsupported internal key. We recommend that you use an AES key that you create and manage as the wrapping key.

Required: Yes

**-i**

Specifies an alternate initial value (IV) for the algorithm. Use the default value unless you have a special condition that requires an alternative.

Default: 0xA6A6A6A6A6A6A6A6. The default value is defined in the [AES Key Wrap](#) algorithm specification.

Required: No

**-out**

Specifies an alternate name for the output file that contains the wrapped or unwrapped key. The default is `wrapped_key` (for wrap operations) and `unwrapped_key` (for unwrap operations) in the local directory.

If the file exists, the **aesWrapUnwrap** overwrites it without warning. If the command fails, **aesWrapUnwrap** creates an output file with no contents.

Default: For wrap: `wrapped_key`. For unwrap: `unwrapped_key`.

Required: No

## Related Topics

- [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#)
- [imSymKey \(p. 78\)](#)
- [unWrapKey \(p. 88\)](#)
- [wrapKey \(p. 91\)](#)

## deleteKey

The **deleteKey** command in `key_mgmt_util` deletes a key from the HSM. You can only delete one key at a time. Deleting one key in a key pair has no effect on the other key in the pair.

Only the key owner can delete a key. Users who share the key can use it in cryptographic operations, but not delete it.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start `key\_mgmt\_util`](#) (p. 43) and [login](#) (p. 43) to the HSM as a `crypto` user (CU).

## Syntax

```
deleteKey -h  
deleteKey -k
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use `deleteKey` to delete keys from your HSMs.

### Example : Delete a Key

This command deletes the key with key handle 6. When the command succeeds, `deleteKey` returns success messages from each HSM in the cluster.

```
Command: deleteKey -k 6  
  
Cfm3DeleteKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Delete a Key (Failure)

When the command fails because no key has the specified key handle, `deleteKey` returns an invalid object handle error message.

```
Command: deleteKey -k 252126  
  
Cfm3FindKey returned: 0xa8 : HSM Error: Invalid object handle is passed to this  
operation  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 1 and err state 0x000000a8 : HSM Error: Invalid object handle is passed to  
this operation  
Node id 2 and err state 0x000000a8 : HSM Error: Invalid object handle is passed to  
this operation
```

When the command fails because the current user is not the owner of the key, the command returns an access denied error.

```
Command: deleteKey -k 262152  
  
Cfm3DeleteKey returned: 0xc6 : HSM Error: Key Access is denied.
```

## Parameters

### -h

Displays command line help for the command.

Required: Yes

### **-k**

Specifies the key handle of the key to delete. To find the key handles of keys in the HSM, use [findKey \(p. 55\)](#).

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [findKey \(p. 55\)](#)

## Error2String

The **Error2String** helper command in `key_mgmt_util` returns the error that corresponds to a `key_mgmt_util` hexadecimal error code. You can use this command when troubleshooting your commands and scripts.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

### Syntax

```
Error2String -h
Error2String -r <response-code>
```

### Examples

These examples show how to use **Error2String** to get the error string for a `key_mgmt_util` error code.

#### Example : Get an Error Description

This command gets the error description for the `0xdb` error code. The description explains that an attempt to log in to `key_mgmt_util` failed because the user has the wrong user type. Only crypto users (CU) can log in to `key_mgmt_util`.

```
Command: Error2String -r 0xdb

Error Code db maps to HSM Error: Invalid User Type.
```

#### Example : Find the Error Code

This example shows where to find the error code in a `key_mgmt_util` error. The error code, `0xc6`, appears after the string: `Cfm3command-name returned: .`

In this example, [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#) indicates that the current user (user 4) can use the key in cryptographic operations. Nevertheless, when the user tries to use [deleteKey \(p. 47\)](#) to delete the key, the command returns error code `0xc6`.

```
Command: deleteKey -k 262162

Cfm3DeleteKey returned: 0xc6 : HSM Error: Key Access is denied

Cluster Error Status

Command: getKeyInfo -k 262162
```

```
Cfm3GetKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Owned by user 3  
  
also, shared to following 1 user(s):  
  
4
```

If the `0xc6` error is reported to you, you can use an **Error2String** command like this one to look up the error. In this case, the `deleteKey` command failed with an access denied error because the key is shared with the current user but owned by a different user. Only key owners have permission to delete a key.

```
Command: Error2String -r 0xa8  
  
Error Code c6 maps to HSM Error: Key Access is denied
```

## Parameters

### -h

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### -r

Specifies a hexadecimal error code. The `0x` hexadecimal indicator is required.

Required: Yes

## exSymKey

The **exSymKey** command in the `key_mgmt_util` tool exports a plaintext copy of a symmetric key from the HSM and saves it in a file on disk. To export an encrypted (wrapped) copy of a key, use [wrapKey](#) (p. 91). To import a plaintext key, like the ones that `exSymKey` exports, use [imSymKey](#) (p. 78).

During the export process, **exSymKey** uses an AES key that you specify (the *wrapping key*) to *wrap* (encrypt) and then *unwrap* (decrypt) the key to be exported. However, the result of the export operation is a plaintext (*unwrapped*) key on disk.

Only the owner of a key, that is, the CU user who created the key, can export it. Users who share the key can use it in cryptographic operations, but they cannot export it.

The **exSymKey** operation copies the key material to a file that you specify, but it does not remove the key from the HSM, change its [key attributes](#) (p. 92), or prevent you from using the key in cryptographic operations. You can export the same key multiple times.

**exSymKey** exports only symmetric keys. To export public keys, use **exPubKey**. To export private keys, use **exportPrivateKey**.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util](#) (p. 43) and [login](#) (p. 43) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
exSymKey -h
```

```
exSymKey -k <key-to-export>
         -w <wrapping-key>
         -out <key-file>
         [-m 4]
         [-wk <unwrapping-key-file> ]
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use **exSymKey** to export symmetric keys that you own from your HSMs.

### Example : Export a 3DES Symmetric Key

This command exports a Triple DES (3DES) symmetric key (key handle 7). It uses an existing AES key (key handle 6) in the HSM as the wrapping key. Then it writes the plaintext of the 3DES key to the `3DES.key` file.

The output shows that key 7 (the 3DES key) was successfully wrapped and unwrapped, and then written to the `3DES.key` file.

#### Warning

Although the output says that a "Wrapped Symmetric Key" was written to the output file, the output file contains a plaintext (unwrapped) key.

```
Command: exSymKey -k 7 -w 6 -out 3DES.key

Cfm3WrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3UnWrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Wrapped Symmetric Key written to file "3DES.key"
```

### Example : Exporting with Session-Only Wrapping Key

This example shows how to use a key that exists only in the session as the wrapping key. Because the key to be exported is wrapped, immediately unwrapped, and delivered as plaintext, there is no need to retain the wrapping key.

This series of commands exports an AES key with key handle 8 from the HSM. It uses an AES session key created especially for the purpose.

The first command uses [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) to create a 256-bit AES key. It uses the `-sess` parameter to create a key that exists only in the current session.

The output shows that the HSM creates key 262168.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 32 -l AES-wrapping-key -sess

Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 262168

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

Next, the example verifies that key 8, the key to be exported, is a symmetric key that is extractable. It also verifies that the wrapping key, key 262168, is an AES key that exists only in the session. You can use the [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) command, but this example exports the attributes of both keys to files and then uses `grep` to find the relevant attribute values in the file.

These commands use `getAttribute` with an `-a` value of 512 (all) to get all attributes for keys 8 and 262168. For information about the key attributes, see the [the section called "Key Attribute Reference" \(p. 92\)](#).

```
getAttribute -o 8 -a 512 -out attributes/attr_8
getAttribute -o 262168 -a 512 -out attributes/attr_262168
```

These commands use `grep` to verify the attributes of the key to be exported (key 8) and the session-only wrapping key (key 262168).

```
// Verify that the key to be exported is a symmetric key.
$ grep -A 1 "OBJ_ATTR_CLASS" attributes/attr_8
OBJ_ATTR_CLASS
0x04

// Verify that the key to be exported is extractable.
$ grep -A 1 "OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE" attributes/attr_8
OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE
0x00000001

// Verify that the wrapping key is an AES key
$ grep -A 1 "OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE" attributes/attr_262168
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE
0x1f

// Verify that the wrapping key is a session key
$ grep -A 1 "OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN" attributes/attr_262168
OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN
0x00

// Verify that the wrapping key can be used for wrapping
$ grep -A 1 "OBJ_ATTR_WRAP" attributes/attr_262168
OBJ_ATTR_WRAP
0x00000001
```

Finally, we use an `exSymKey` command to export key 8 using the session key (key 262168) as the wrapping key.

When the session ends, key 262168 no longer exists.

```
Command: exSymKey -k 8 -w 262168 -out aes256_H8.key

Cfm3WrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3UnWrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Wrapped Symmetric Key written to file "aes256_H8.key"
```

### Example : Use an External Unwrapping Key

This example shows how to use an external unwrapping key to export a key from the HSM.

When you export a key from the HSM, you specify an AES key on the HSM to be the wrapping key. By default, that wrapping key is used to wrap and unwrap the key to be exported. However, you can use the `-wk` parameter to tell `exSymKey` to use an external key in a file on disk for unwrapping. When you do, the key specified by the `-w` parameter wraps the target key, and the key in the file specified by the `-wk` parameter unwraps the key.

Because the wrapping key must be an AES key, which is symmetric, the wrapping key in the HSM and unwrapping key on disk must have the same key material. To do this, you must import the wrapping key to the HSM or export the wrapping key from the HSM before the export operation.

This example creates a key outside of the HSM and imports it into the HSM. It uses the internal copy of the key to wrap a symmetric key that is being exported, and the copy of key in the file to unwrap it.

The first command uses OpenSSL to generate a 256-bit AES key. It saves the key to the `aes256-forImport.key` file. The OpenSSL command does not return any output, but you can use several commands to confirm its success. This example uses the `wc` (wordcount) tool, which confirms that the file that contains 32 bytes of data.

```
$ openssl rand -out keys/aes256-forImport.key 32

$ wc keys/aes256-forImport.key
0  2 32 keys/aes256-forImport.key
```

This command uses the `imSymKey` command to import the AES key from the `aes256-forImport.key` file to the HSM. When the command completes, the key exists in the HSM with key handle 262167 and in the `aes256-forImport.key` file.

```
Command: imSymKey -f keys/aes256-forImport.key -t 31 -l aes256-imported -w 6

Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3CreateUnwrapTemplate returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3UnWrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Unwrapped.  Key Handle: 262167

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

This command uses the key in an export operation. The command uses `exSymKey` to export key 21, a 192-bit AES key. To wrap the key, it uses key 262167, which is the copy that was imported into the HSM. To unwrap the key, it uses the same key material in the `aes256-forImport.key` file. When the command completes, key 21 is exported to the `aes192_h21.key` file.

```
Command: exSymKey -k 21 -w 262167 -out aes192_H21.key -wk aes256-forImport.key

Cfm3WrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Wrapped Symmetric Key written to file "aes192_H21.key"
```

## Parameters

**-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

**-k**

Specifies the key handle of the key to export. This parameter is required. Enter the key handle of a symmetric key that you own. This parameter is required. To find key handles, use the [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) command.

To verify that a key can be exported, use the [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) command to get the value of the `OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE` attribute, which is represented by constant 354. Also, you can export only keys that you own. To find the owner of a key, use the [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#) command.

Required: Yes

**-w**

Specifies the key handle of the wrapping key. This parameter is required. To find key handles, use the [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) command.

A *wrapping key* is a key in the HSM that is used to encrypt (wrap) and then decrypt (unwrap) the key to be exported. Only AES keys can be used as wrapping keys.

You can use any AES key (of any size) as a wrapping key. Because the wrapping key wraps, and then immediately unwraps, the target key, you can use as session-only AES key as a wrapping key. To determine whether a key can be used as a wrapping key, use [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) to get the value of the `OBJ_ATTR_WRAP` attribute, which is represented by the constant 262. To create a wrapping key, use [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) to create an AES key (type 31).

If you use the `-wk` parameter to specify an external unwrapping key, the `-w` wrapping key is used to wrap, but not to unwrap, the key during export.

**Note**

Key 4 represents an unsupported internal key. We recommend that you use an AES key that you create and manage as the wrapping key.

Required: Yes

**-out**

Specifies the path and name of the output file. When the command succeeds, this file contains the exported key in plaintext. If the file already exists, the command overwrites it without warning.

Required: Yes

**-m**

Specifies the wrapping mechanism. The only valid value is 4, which represents the `NIST_AES_WRAP` mechanism.

Required: No

Default: 4

**-wk**

Use the AES key in the specified file to unwrap the key that is being exported. Enter the path and name of a file that contains a plaintext AES key.

When you include this parameter, `exSymKey` uses the key in the HSM that is specified by the `-w` parameter to wrap the key that is being exported and it uses the key in the `-wk` file to unwrap it. The `-w` and `-wk` parameter values must resolve to the same plaintext key.

Required: No

Default: Use the wrapping key on the HSM to unwrap.

## Related Topics

- [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#)

- [imSymKey](#) (p. 78)
- [wrapKey](#) (p. 91)

## findKey

Use the **findKey** command in `key_mgmt_util` to search for keys by the values of the key attributes. When a key matches all the criteria that you set, **findKey** returns the key handle. With no parameters, **findKey** returns the key handles of all the keys that you can use in the HSM. To find the attribute values of a particular key, use [getAttribute](#) (p. 73).

Like all `key_mgmt_util` commands, **findKey** is user specific. It returns only the keys that the current user can use in cryptographic operations. This includes keys that current user owns and keys that have been shared with the current user.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util](#) (p. 43) and [login](#) (p. 43) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

### Syntax

```
findKey -h

findKey [-c <key class>]
        [-t <key type>]
        [-l <key label>]
        [-id <key ID>]
        [-sess (0 | 1)]
        [-u <user-ids>]
        [-m <modulus>]
        [-kcv <key_check_value>]
```

### Examples

These examples show how to use **findKey** to find and identify keys in your HSMs.

#### Example : Find All Keys

This command finds all keys for the current user in the HSM. The output includes the key handles of all keys in the HSM.

To get the attributes of a key with a particular key handle, use [getAttribute](#) (p. 73).

```
Command: findKey

Total number of keys present 13

number of keys matched from start index 0::12
6, 7, 524296, 9, 262154, 262155, 262156, 262157, 262158, 262159, 262160, 262161, 262162

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

#### Example : Find Keys by Type, User, and Session

This command finds persistent AES keys that the current user and user 3 can use. (User 3 might be able to use other keys that the current user cannot see.)

```
Command: findKey -t 31 -sess 0 -u 3
```

### Example : Find Keys by Class and Label

This command finds all public keys for the current user with the 2018-sept label.

```
Command: findKey -c 2 -l 2018-sept
```

### Example : Find RSA Keys by Modulus

This command finds RSA keys (type 0) for the current user that were created by using the modulus in the m4.txt file.

```
Command: findKey -t 0 -m m4.txt
```

## Parameters

### -h

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### -t

Finds keys of the specified type. Enter the constant that represents the key class. For example, to find 3DES keys, type `-t 21`.

Valid values:

- 0: [RSA](#)
- 1: [DSA](#)
- 3: [EC](#)
- 16: [GENERIC\\_SECRET](#)
- 18: [RC4](#)
- 21: [Triple DES \(3DES\)](#)
- 31: [AES](#)

Required: No

### -c

Finds keys in the specified class. Enter the constant that represents the key class. For example, to find public keys, type `-c 2`.

Valid values for each key type:

- 2: Public. This class contains the public keys of public-private key pairs.
- 3: Private. This class contains the private keys of public-private key pairs.
- 4: Secret. This class contains all symmetric keys.

Required: No

### -l

Finds keys with the specified label. Type the exact label. You cannot use wildcard characters or regular expressions in the `--label` value.

Required: No

### **-id**

Finds the key with the specified ID. Type the exact ID string. You cannot use wildcard characters or regular expressions in the `-id` value.

Required: No

### **-sess**

Finds keys by session status. To find keys that are valid only in the current session, type `1`. To find persistent keys, type `0`.

Required: No

### **-u**

Finds keys that the current user and the specified users can use in cryptographic operations. Type a comma-separated list of HSM user IDs, such as `-u 3` or `-u 4,7`. To find the IDs of users on an HSM, use [listUsers](#) (p. 85).

When you specify one user ID, **findKey** returns all the keys for that user. When you specify multiple user IDs, **findKey** returns the keys that all the specified users can use.

Because **findKey** only returns keys that the current user can use, the `-u` results are always identical to or a subset of the current user's keys.

Required: No

### **-m**

Finds keys that were created by using the RSA modulus in the specified file. Type the path to file that stores the modulus.

Required: No

### **-kcv**

Finds keys with the specified key check value.

The *key check value* (KCV) is an 8-byte hash or checksum of a key. The HSM calculates a KCV when it generates the key. You can also calculate a KCV outside of the HSM, such as after you export a key. You can then compare the KCV values to confirm the identity and integrity of the key. To get the KCV of a key, use [getAttribute](#) (p. 73).

AWS CloudHSM uses the following standard method to generate a key check value:

- **Symmetric keys:** First 8 bytes of the result of encrypting 16 zero-filled bytes with the key.
- **Asymmetric key pairs:** First 8 bytes of the modulus hash.

Required: No

## Output

The **findKey** output lists the total number of matching keys and their key handles.

```
Command: findKey
Total number of keys present 10

number of keys matched from start index 0::9
6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 262156, 262157, 262158, 262159

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Related Topics

- [findSingleKey](#) (p. 58)
- [getKeyInfo](#) (p. 76)
- [getAttribute](#) (p. 73)
- [Key Attribute Reference](#) (p. 92)

## findSingleKey

The **findSingleKey** command in the key\_mgmt\_util tool verifies that a key exists on all HSMs in the cluster.

Before you run any key\_mgmt\_util command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util](#) (p. 43) and [login](#) (p. 43) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
findSingleKey -h  
findSingleKey -k <key-handle>
```

## Example

### Example

This command verifies that key 252136 exists on all three HSMs in the cluster.

```
Command: findSingleKey -k 252136  
Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Parameters

### -h

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### -k

Specifies the key handle of one key in the HSM. This parameter is required.

To find key handles, use the [findKey](#) (p. 85) command.

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [findKey](#) (p. 85)

- [getKeyInfo](#) (p. 85)
- [getAttribute](#) (p. 55)

## genDSAKeyPair

The **genDSAKeyPair** command in the `key_mgmt_util` tool generates a [Digital Signing Algorithm](#) (DSA) key pair in your HSMs. You must specify the modulus length; the command generates the modulus value. You can also assign an ID, share the key with other HSM users, create nonextractable keys, and create keys that expire when the session ends. When the command succeeds, it returns the *key handles* that the HSM assigns to the public and private keys. You can use the key handles to identify the keys to other commands.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util](#) (p. 43) and [login](#) (p. 43) to the HSM as a `crypto` user (CU).

### Tip

To find the attributes of a key that you have created, such as the type, size, label, and ID, use [getAttribute](#) (p. 55). To find the keys for a particular user, use [getKeyInfo](#) (p. 76). To find keys based on their attribute values, use [findKey](#) (p. 55).

## Syntax

```
genDSAKeyPair -h

genDSAKeyPair -m <modulus length>
               -l <label>
               [-id <key ID>]
               [-min_srv <minimum number of servers>]
               [-m_value <0..8>]
               [-nex]
               [-sess]
               [-timeout <number of seconds> ]
               [-u <user-ids>]
               [-attest]
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use **genDSAKeyPair** to create a DSA key pair.

### Example : Create a DSA Key Pair

This command creates a DSA key pair with a DSA label. The output shows that the key handle of the public key is 19 and the handle of the private key is 21.

```
Command: genDSAKeyPair -m 2048 -l DSA

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair: returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair:   public key handle: 19   private key handle: 21

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Create a Session-Only DSA Key Pair

This command creates a DSA key pair that is valid only in the current session. The command assigns a unique ID of `DSA_temp_pair` in addition to the required (nonunique) label. You might want to create

a key pair like this to sign and verify a session-only token. The output shows that the key handle of the public key is 12 and the handle of the private key is 14.

```
Command: genDSAKeyPair -m 2048 -l DSA-temp -id DSA_temp_pair -sess

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair: returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair:   public key handle: 12   private key handle: 14

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

To confirm that the key pair exists only in the session, use the `-sess` parameter of [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) with a value of 1 (true).

```
Command: findKey -sess 1

Total number of keys present 2

number of keys matched from start index 0::1
12, 14

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Create a Shared, Nonextractable DSA Key Pair

This command creates a DSA key pair. The private key is shared with three other users, and it cannot be exported from the HSM. Public keys can be used by any user and can always be extracted.

```
Command: genDSAKeyPair -m 2048 -l DSA -id DSA_shared_pair -nex -u 3,5,6

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair: returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair:   public key handle: 11   private key handle: 19

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Create a Quorum-Controlled Key Pair

This command creates a DSA key pair with the label `DSA-mV2`. The command uses the `-u` parameter to share the private key with user 4 and 6. It uses the `-m_value` parameter to require a quorum of at least two approvals for any cryptographic operations that use the private key. The command also uses the `-attest` parameter to verify the integrity of the firmware on which the key pair is generated.

The output shows that the command generates a public key with key handle 12 and a private key with key handle 17, and that the attestation check on the cluster firmware passed.

```
Command: genDSAKeyPair -m 2048 -l DSA-mV2 -m_value 2 -u 4,6 -attest

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair: returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair:   public key handle: 12   private key handle: 17

Attestation Check : [PASS]
```

```
Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

This command uses [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#) on the private key (key handle 17). The output confirms that the key is owned by the current user (user 3) and that it is shared with users 4 and 6 (and no others). The output also shows that quorum authentication is enabled and the quorum size is two.

```
Command: getKeyInfo -k 17

Cfm3GetKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Owned by user 3

also, shared to following 2 user(s):

    4
    6

2 Users need to approve to use/manage this key
```

## Parameters

### **-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### **-m**

Specifies the length of the modulus in bits. The only valid value is 2048.

Required: Yes

### **-l**

Specifies a user-defined label for the key. Type a string.

You can use any phrase that helps you to identify the key. Because the label does not have to be unique, you can use it to group and categorize keys.

Required: Yes

### **-id**

Specifies a user-defined identifier for the key. Type a string that is unique in the cluster. The default is an empty string.

Default: No ID value.

Required: No

### **-min\_srv**

Specifies the minimum number of HSMs on which the key is synchronized before the value of the `-timeout` parameter expires. If the key is not synchronized to the specified number of servers in the time allotted, it is not created.

AWS CloudHSM automatically synchronizes every key to every HSM in the cluster. To speed up your process, set the value of `min_srv` to less than the number of HSMs in the cluster and set a low timeout value. Note, however, that some requests might not generate a key.

Default: 1

Required: No

#### **-m\_value**

Specifies the number of users who must approve any cryptographic operation that uses the private key in the pair. Type a value from 0 to 8.

This parameter establishes a quorum authentication requirement for the private key. The default value, 0, disables the quorum authentication feature for the key. When quorum authentication is enabled, the specified number of users must sign a token to approve cryptographic operations that use the private key, and operations that share or unshare the private key.

To find the `m_value` of a key, use [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#).

This parameter is valid only when the `-u` parameter in the command shares the key pair with enough users to satisfy the `m_value` requirement.

Default: 0

Required: No

#### **-nex**

Makes the private key nonextractable. The private key that is generated cannot be [exported from the HSM \(p. 101\)](#). Public keys are always extractable.

Default: Both the public and private keys in the key pair are extractable.

Required: No

#### **-sess**

Creates a key that exists only in the current session. The key cannot be recovered after the session ends.

Use this parameter when you need a key only briefly, such as a wrapping key that encrypts, and then quickly decrypts, another key. Do not use a session key to encrypt data that you might need to decrypt after the session ends.

To change a session key to a persistent (token) key, use [setAttribute \(p. 86\)](#).

Default: The key is persistent.

Required: No

#### **-timeout**

Specifies how long (in seconds) the command waits for a key to be synchronized to the number of HSMs specified by the `min_srv` parameter.

This parameter is valid only when the `min_srv` parameter is also used in the command.

Default: No timeout. The command waits indefinitely and returns only when the key is synchronized to the minimum number of servers.

Required: No

### **-u**

Shares the private key in the pair with the specified users. This parameter gives other HSM crypto users (CUs) permission to use the private key in cryptographic operations. Public keys can be used by any user without sharing.

Type a comma-separated list of HSM user IDs, such as `-u 5,6`. Do not include the HSM user ID of the current user. To find HSM user IDs of CUs on the HSM, use [listUsers \(p. 85\)](#). To share and unshare existing keys, use **shareKey**.

Default: Only the current user can use the private key.

Required: No

### **-attest**

Runs an integrity check that verifies that the firmware on which the cluster runs has not been tampered with.

Default: No attestation check.

Required: No

## Related Topics

- [genRSAKeyPair \(p. 63\)](#)
- [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#)
- [genECCKeypair](#)

## genPBEKey

The `genPBE` command in the `key_mgmt_util` tool generates a Triple DES (3DES) symmetric key based on a password. This command is not supported on the FIPS-validated HSMs that AWS CloudHSM provides.

To create symmetric keys, use [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#). To create asymmetric key pairs, use [genRSAKeyPair \(p. 63\)](#), [genDSAKeyPair \(p. 59\)](#), or [genECCKeypair](#).

## genRSAKeyPair

The `genRSAKeyPair` command in the `key_mgmt_util` tool generates an [RSA](#) asymmetric key pair. You specify the key type, modulus length, and a public exponent. The command generates a modulus of the specified length and creates the key pair. You can assign an ID, share the key with other HSM users, create nonextractable keys and keys that expire when the session ends. When the command succeeds, it returns a key handle that the HSM assigns to the key. You can use the key handle to identify the key to other commands.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

### **Tip**

To find the attributes of a key that you have created, such as the type, size, label, and ID, use [getAttribute \(p. 55\)](#). To find the keys for a particular user, use [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#). To find keys based on their attribute values, use [findKey \(p. 55\)](#).

## Syntax

```
genRSAKeyPair -h
```

```
genRSAKeyPair -m <modulus length>
               -e <public exponent>
               -l <label>
               [-id <key ID>]
               [-min_srv <minimum number of servers>]
               [-m_value <0..8>]
               [-nex]
               [-sess]
               [-timeout <number of seconds> ]
               [-u <user-ids>]
               [-attest]
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use **genRSAKeyPair** to create asymmetric key pairs in your HSMs.

### Example : Create and Examine an RSA Key Pair

This command creates an RSA key pair with a 2048-bit modulus and an exponent of 65541. The output shows that the public key handle is 262159 and the private key handle is 262160.

```
Command: genRSAKeyPair -m 2048 -e 65541 -l rsa_test

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Cfm3GenerateKeyPair: public key handle: 262159 private key handle: 262160
Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

The next command uses [getAttribute \(p. 55\)](#) to get the attributes of the public key that we just created. It writes the output to the `attr_262159` file. It is followed by a `cat` command that gets the content of the attribute file. For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

The resulting hexadecimal values confirm that it is a public key (`OBJ_ATTR_CLASS 0x02`) with a type of RSA (`OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE 0x00`). You can use this public key to encrypt (`OBJ_ATTR_ENCRYPT 0x01`), but not to decrypt (`OBJ_ATTR_DECRYPT 0x00`) or wrap (`OBJ_ATTR_WRAP 0x00`). The results also include the key length (512, `0x200`), the modulus, the modulus length (2048, `0x800`), and the public exponent (65541, `0x10005`).

```
Command: getAttribute -o 262159 -a 512 -out attr_262159

got all attributes of size 731 attr cnt 20
Attributes dumped into attr_262159 file

Cfm3GetAttribute returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

$ cat attr_262159
OBJ_ATTR_CLASS
0x02
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_PRIVATE
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_ENCRYPT
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_DECRYPT
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_WRAP
```

```

0x00
OBJ_ATTR_UNWRAP
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_SIGN
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_VERIFY
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_LOCAL
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_SENSITIVE
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_LABEL
rsa_test
OBJ_ATTR_ID

OBJ_ATTR_VALUE_LEN
0x00000200
OBJ_ATTR_KCV
0x0a4364
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS
9162b8d5d01d7b5b1179686d15e74d1dd38eaa5b6e64673195aaf951df8828deeca002c215d4209a
c0bf90a9587ddca7f6351d5d4df0f6201b65daccd9955e4f49a819c0d39cb6717623bfa33436facc
835c15961a58a63ca25bf0d2d4888d77418c571c190f8cc5a82483050658c00df4658dff248202bc
95e886b1b5c7a981f09b0eb4f606641efe09bf3881f63c90d4a4415219ba796df449862b9d9c2a78
d1c24fff56cf9b25f2b7dee44e200dd9550bd097a7044b22ca004033236bc708a0bad4a111533ed4
6d049e5ec0b449b4a3877e566b0ce9d0a60fd1c15352b131ccc234f1719bed3918df579a66e7fff2
9dc80dc5dbbf6e3d7d092d67c6abca7d
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS_BITS
0x00000800
OBJ_ATTR_PUBLIC_EXPONENT
0x010005

```

### Example : Generate a Shared RSA Key Pair

This command generates an RSA key pair and shares the private key with user 4, another CU on the HSM. The command uses the `m_value` parameter to require at least two approvals before the private key in the pair can be used in a cryptographic operation. When you use the `m_value` parameter, you must also use `-u` in the command and the `m_value` cannot exceed the total number of users (number of values in `-u + owner`).

```

Command: genRSAKeyPair -m 2048 -e 195193 -l rsa_mofn -id rsa_mv2 -u 4 -m_value 2

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair:    public key handle: 27    private key handle: 28

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

```

### Parameters

#### -h

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

#### -m

Specifies the length of the modulus in bits. The minimum value is 2048.

Required: Yes

**-e**

Specifies the public exponent. The value must be an odd number greater than or equal to 65537.

Required: Yes

**-l**

Specifies a user-defined label for the key. Type a string.

You can use any phrase that helps you to identify the key. Because the label does not have to be unique, you can use it to group and categorize keys.

Required: Yes

**-attest**

Runs an integrity check that verifies that the firmware on which the cluster runs has not been tampered with.

Default: No attestation check.

Required: No

**-id**

Specifies a user-defined identifier for the key. Type a string that is unique in the cluster. The default is an empty string.

Default: No ID value.

Required: No

**-min\_srv**

Specifies the minimum number of HSMs on which the key is synchronized before the value of the `-timeout` parameter expires. If the key is not synchronized to the specified number of servers in the time allotted, it is not created.

AWS CloudHSM automatically synchronizes every key to every HSM in the cluster. To speed up your process, set the value of `min_srv` to less than the number of HSMs in the cluster and set a low timeout value. Note, however, that some requests might not generate a key.

Default: 1

Required: No

**-m\_value**

Specifies the number of users who must approve any cryptographic operation that uses the private key in the pair. Type a value from 0 to 8.

This parameter establishes a quorum authentication requirement for the private key. The default value, 0, disables the quorum authentication feature for the key. When quorum authentication is enabled, the specified number of users must sign a token to approve cryptographic operations that use the private key, and operations that share or unshare the private key.

To find the `m_value` of a key, use [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#).

This parameter is valid only when the `-u` parameter in the command shares the key pair with enough users to satisfy the `m_value` requirement.

Default: 0

Required: No

**-nex**

Makes the private key nonextractable. The private key that is generated cannot be [exported from the HSM \(p. 101\)](#). Public keys are always extractable.

Default: Both the public and private keys in the key pair are extractable.

Required: No

**-sess**

Creates a key that exists only in the current session. The key cannot be recovered after the session ends.

Use this parameter when you need a key only briefly, such as a wrapping key that encrypts, and then quickly decrypts, another key. Do not use a session key to encrypt data that you might need to decrypt after the session ends.

To change a session key to a persistent (token) key, use [setAttribute \(p. 86\)](#).

Default: The key is persistent.

Required: No

**-timeout**

Specifies how long (in seconds) the command waits for a key to be synchronized to the number of HSMs specified by the `min_srv` parameter.

This parameter is valid only when the `min_srv` parameter is also used in the command.

Default: No timeout. The command waits indefinitely and returns only when the key is synchronized to the minimum number of servers.

Required: No

**-u**

Shares the private key in the pair with the specified users. This parameter gives other HSM crypto users (CUs) permission to use the private key in cryptographic operations. Public keys can be used by any user without sharing.

Type a comma-separated list of HSM user IDs, such as `-u 5,6`. Do not include the HSM user ID of the current user. To find HSM user IDs of CUs on the HSM, use [listUsers \(p. 85\)](#). To share and unshare existing keys, use **shareKey**.

Default: Only the current user can use the private key.

Required: No

## Related Topics

- [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#)
- [createKeyPair](#)
- [genDSAKeyPair \(p. 59\)](#)
- [genECCKeyPair](#)

## genSymKey

The **genSymKey** command in the `key_mgmt_util` tool generates a symmetric key in your HSMs. You can specify the key type and size, assign an ID and label, and share the key with other HSM users. You

can also create nonextractable keys and keys that expire when the session ends. When the command succeeds, it returns a key handle that the HSM assigns to the key. You can use the key handle to identify the key to other commands.

Before you run any key\_mgmt\_util command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

**Tip**

To find the attributes of a key that you have created, such as the type, size, label, and ID, use [getAttribute \(p. 55\)](#). To find the keys for a particular user, use [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#). To find keys based on their attribute values, use [findKey \(p. 55\)](#).

## Syntax

```
genSymKey -h

genSymKey -t <key-type>
           -s <key-size>
           -l <label>
           [-id <key-ID>]
           [-min_srv <minimum-number-of-servers>]
           [-m_value <0..8>]
           [-nex]
           [-sess]
           [-timeout <number-of-seconds> ]
           [-u <user-ids>]
           [-attest]
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use **genSymKey** to create symmetric keys in your HSMs.

### Example : Generate an AES Key

This command creates a 256-bit AES key with an aes256 label. The output shows that the key handle of the new key is 6.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 32 -l aes256

Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 6

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Create a Session Key

This command creates a nonextractable 192-bit AES key that is valid only in the current session. You might want to create a key like this to wrap (and then immediately unwrap) a key that is being exported.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 24 -l tmpAES -id wrap01 -nex -sess
```

### Example : Return Quickly

This command creates a generic 512-byte key with a label of IT\_test\_key. The command does not wait for the key to be synchronized to all HSMs in the cluster. Instead, it returns as soon as the key is created on any one HSM (-min\_srv 1) or in 1 second (-timeout 1), whichever is shorter. If the key is not synchronized to the specified minimum number of HSMs before the timeout expires, it is not

generated. You might want to use a command like this in a script that creates numerous keys, like the for loop in the following example.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 16 -s 512 -l IT_test_key -min_srv 1 -timeout 1

$ for i in {1..30};
  do /opt/cloudhsm/bin/key_mgmt_util Cfm3Util singlecmd loginHSM -u CU -s example_user -
p example_pwd genSymKey -l aes -t 31 -s 32 -min_srv 1 -timeout 1;
  done;
```

### Example : Create a Quorum Authorized Generic Key

This command creates a 2048-bit generic secret key with the label `generic-mV2`. The command uses the `-u` parameter to share the key with another CU, user 6. It uses the `-m_value` parameter to require a quorum of at least two approvals for any cryptographic operations that use the key. The command also uses the `-attest` parameter to verify the integrity of the firmware on which the key is generated.

The output shows that the command generated a key with key handle 9 and that the attestation check on the cluster firmware passed.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 16 -s 2048 -l generic-mV2 -m_value 2 -u 6 -attest

Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 9

Attestation Check : [PASS]

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Create and Examine a Key

This command creates a Triple DES key with a `3DES_shared` label and an ID of `IT-02`. The key can be used by the current user, and users 4 and 5. The command fails if the ID is not unique in the cluster or if the current user is user 4 or 5.

The output shows that the new key has key handle 7.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 21 -s 24 -l 3DES_shared -id IT-02 -u 4,5

Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 7

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

To verify that the new 3DES key is owned by the current user and shared with users 4 and 5, use [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#). The command uses the handle that was assigned to the new key (Key Handle: 7).

The output confirms that the key is owned by user 3 and shared with users 4 and 5.

```
Command: getKeyInfo -k 7

Cfm3GetKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Owned by user 3

also, shared to following 2 user(s):

    4, 5
```

To confirm the other properties of the key, use [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#). The first command uses `getAttribute` to get all attributes (`-a 512`) of key handle 7 (`-o 7`). It writes them to the `attr_7` file. The second command uses `cat` to get the contents of the `attr_7` file.

This command confirms that key 7 is a 192-bit (`OBJ_ATTR_VALUE_LEN 0x00000018` or 24-byte) 3DES (`OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE 0x15`) symmetric key (`OBJ_ATTR_CLASS 0x04`) with a label of `3DES_shared` (`OBJ_ATTR_LABEL 3DES_shared`) and an ID of `IT-02` (`OBJ_ATTR_ID IT-02`). The key is persistent (`OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN 0x01`) and extractable (`OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE 0x01`) and can be used for encryption, decryption, and wrapping.

For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

```
Command: getAttribute -o 7 -a 512 -attr_7

got all attributes of size 444 attr cnt 17
Attributes dumped into attr_7 file

    Cfm3GetAttribute returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

$ cat attr_7

OBJ_ATTR_CLASS
0x04
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE
0x15
OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_PRIVATE
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_ENCRYPT
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_DECRYPT
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_WRAP
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_UNWRAP
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_SIGN
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_VERIFY
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_LOCAL
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_SENSITIVE
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_LABEL
3DES_shared
OBJ_ATTR_ID
IT-02
OBJ_ATTR_VALUE_LEN
0x00000018
OBJ_ATTR_KCV
0x59a46e
```

## Parameters

### **-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### **-t**

Specifies the type of the symmetric key. Enter the constant that represents the key type. For example, to create an AES key, type `-t 31`.

Valid values:

- 16: [GENERIC\\_SECRET](#). A *generic secret key* is a byte array that does not conform to any particular standard, such as the requirements for an AES key.
- 18: [RC4](#). RC4 keys are not valid on FIPS-mode HSMs
- 21: [Triple DES \(3DES\)](#).
- 31: [AES](#)

Required: Yes

### **-s**

Specifies the key size in bytes. For example, to create a 192-bit key, type 24.

Valid values for each key type:

- AES: 16 (128 bits), 24 (192 bits), 32 (256 bits)
- 3DES: 24 (192 bits)
- RC4: <256 (2048 bits)
- Generic Secret: <3584 (28672 bits)

Required: Yes

### **-l**

Specifies a user-defined label for the key. Type a string.

You can use any phrase that helps you to identify the key. Because the label does not have to be unique, you can use it to group and categorize keys.

Required: Yes

### **-attest**

Runs an integrity check that verifies that the firmware on which the cluster runs has not been tampered with.

Default: No attestation check.

Required: No

### **-id**

Specifies a user-defined identifier for the key. Type a string that is unique in the cluster. The default is an empty string.

Default: No ID value.

Required: No

### **-min\_srv**

Specifies the minimum number of HSMs on which the key is synchronized before the value of the `-timeout` parameter expires. If the key is not synchronized to the specified number of servers in the time allotted, it is not created.

AWS CloudHSM automatically synchronizes every key to every HSM in the cluster. To speed up your process, set the value of `min_srv` to less than the number of HSMs in the cluster and set a low timeout value. Note, however, that some requests might not generate a key.

Default: 1

Required: No

### **-m\_value**

Specifies the number of users who must approve any cryptographic operation that uses the key. Type a value from 0 to 8.

This parameter establishes a quorum authentication requirement for the key. The default value, 0, disables the quorum authentication feature for the key. When quorum authentication is enabled, the specified number of users must sign a token to approve cryptographic operations that use the key, and operations that share or unshare the key.

To find the `m_value` of a key, use [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#).

This parameter is valid only when the `-u` parameter in the command shares the key with enough users to satisfy the `m_value` requirement.

Default: 0

Required: No

### **-nex**

Makes the key nonextractable. The key that is generated cannot be [exported from the HSM \(p. 101\)](#).

Default: The key is extractable.

Required: No

### **-sess**

Creates a key that exists only in the current session. The key cannot be recovered after the session ends.

Use this parameter when you need a key only briefly, such as a wrapping key that encrypts, and then quickly decrypts, another key. Do not use a session key to encrypt data that you might need to decrypt after the session ends.

To change a session key to a persistent (token) key, use [setAttribute \(p. 86\)](#).

Default: The key is persistent.

Required: No

### **-timeout**

Specifies how long (in seconds) the command waits for a key to be synchronized to the number of HSMs specified by the `min_srv` parameter.

This parameter is valid only when the `min_srv` parameter is also used in the command.

Default: No timeout. The command waits indefinitely and returns only when the key is synchronized to the minimum number of servers.

Required: No

**-u**

Shares the key with the specified users. This parameter gives other HSM crypto users (CUs) permission to use this key in cryptographic operations.

Type a comma-separated list of HSM user IDs, such as `-u 5,6`. Do not include the HSM user ID of the current user. To find HSM user IDs of CUs on the HSM, use [listUsers \(p. 85\)](#). To share and unshare existing keys, use **shareKey**.

Default: Only the current user can use the key.

Required: No

## Related Topics

- [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#)
- [genRSAKeyPair \(p. 63\)](#)
- [genDSAKeyPair \(p. 59\)](#)
- [genECCKeypair](#)

## getAttribute

The **getAttribute** command in `key_mgmt_util` writes the attribute values for an AWS CloudHSM key to a file. You can get one attribute or all attributes for one key. If the attribute you specify does not exist for the key type, such as the modulus of an AES key, **getAttribute** returns an error. For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
getAttribute -h

getAttribute -o <key handle>
               -a <attribute constant>
               -out <file>
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use **getAttribute** to get the attributes of keys in your HSMs.

### Example : Get the Key Type

This example gets the type of the key, such as an AES, 3DES, or generic key, or an RSA or elliptic curve key pair.

The first command runs [listAttributes \(p. 84\)](#), which gets the key attributes and the constants that represent them. The output shows that the constant for key type is 256. For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

```
Command: listAttributes

Description
=====
```

The following are all of the possible attribute values for `getAttributes`.

```
OBJ_ATTR_CLASS           = 0
OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN           = 1
OBJ_ATTR_PRIVATE         = 2
OBJ_ATTR_LABEL           = 3
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE        = 256
OBJ_ATTR_ID              = 258
OBJ_ATTR_SENSITIVE       = 259
OBJ_ATTR_ENCRYPT          = 260
OBJ_ATTR_DECRYPT          = 261
OBJ_ATTR_WRAP            = 262
OBJ_ATTR_UNWRAP          = 263
OBJ_ATTR_SIGN            = 264
OBJ_ATTR_VERIFY          = 266
OBJ_ATTR_LOCAL           = 355
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS         = 288
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS_BITS    = 289
OBJ_ATTR_PUBLIC_EXPONENT = 290
OBJ_ATTR_VALUE_LEN       = 353
OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE     = 354
OBJ_ATTR_KCV             = 371
```

The second command runs `getAttribute`. It requests the key type (attribute 256) for key handle 524296 and writes it to the `attribute.txt` file.

```
Command: getAttribute -o 524296 -a 256 -out attribute.txt
Attributes dumped into attribute.txt file
```

The final command gets the content of the key file. The output reveals that the key type is 0x15 or 21, which is a Triple DES (3DES) key. For definitions of the class and type values, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

```
$ cat attribute.txt
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE
0x00000015
```

### Example : Get All Attributes of a Key

This command gets all attributes of the key with key handle 6 and writes them to the `attr_6` file. It uses an attribute value of 512, which represents all attributes.

```
Command: getAttribute -o 6 -a 512 -out attr_6

got all attributes of size 444 attr cnt 17
Attributes dumped into attribute.txt file

Cfm3GetAttribute returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS>
```

This command shows the content of a sample attribute file with all attribute values. Among the values, it reports that key is a 256-bit AES key with an ID of `test_01` and a label of `aes256`. The key is extractable and persistent, that is, not a session-only key. For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

```
$ cat attribute.txt
OBJ_ATTR_CLASS
0x04
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE
```

```
0x15
OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_PRIVATE
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_ENCRYPT
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_DECRYPT
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_WRAP
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_UNWRAP
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_SIGN
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_VERIFY
0x00
OBJ_ATTR_LOCAL
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_SENSITIVE
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE
0x01
OBJ_ATTR_LABEL
aes256
OBJ_ATTR_ID
test_01
OBJ_ATTR_VALUE_LEN
0x00000020
OBJ_ATTR_KCV
0x1a4b31
```

## Parameters

### **-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### **-o**

Specifies the key handle of the target key. You can specify only one key in each command. To get the key handle of a key, use [findKey \(p. 55\)](#).

Required: Yes

### **-a**

Identifies the attribute. Enter a constant that represents an attribute, or 512, which represents all attributes. For example, to get the key type, type 256, which is the constant for the `OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE` attribute.

To list the attributes and their constants, use [listAttributes \(p. 84\)](#). For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

Required: Yes

### **-out**

Writes the output to the specified file. Type a file path. You cannot write the output to `stdout`.

If the specified file exists, **getAttribute** overwrites the file without warning.

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [listAttributes](#) (p. 84)
- [setAttribute](#) (p. 86)
- [findKey](#) (p. 55)
- [Key Attribute Reference](#) (p. 92)

## getKeyInfo

The **getKeyInfo** command in the `key_mgmt_util` returns the HSM user IDs of users who can use the key, including the owner and crypto users (CU) with whom the key is shared. When quorum authentication is enabled on a key, **getKeyInfo** also returns the number of users who must approve cryptographic operations that use the key. You can run **getKeyInfo** only on keys that you own and keys that are shared with you.

When you run **getKeyInfo** on public keys, **getKeyInfo** returns only the key owner, even though all users of the HSM can use the public key. To find the HSM user IDs of users in your HSMs, use [listUsers](#) (p. 85). To find the keys for a particular user, use **findKey** `-u`.

By default, you own the keys that you create. You can share a key with other users when you create it. Then, to share or unshare an existing key, use **shareKey** in `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util](#) (p. 43) and [login](#) (p. 43) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
getKeyInfo -h
getKeyInfo -k <key-handle>
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use **getKeyInfo** to get information about the users of a key.

### Example : Get the Users for an Asymmetric Key

This command gets the users who can use the AES (asymmetric) key with key handle 9. The output shows that user 3 owns the key and has shared it with user 4.

```
Command:  getKeyInfo -k 9

      Cfm3GetKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

      Owned by user 3

      also, shared to following 1 user(s):

           4
```

### Example : Get the Users for a Symmetric Key Pair

These commands use **getKeyInfo** to get the users who can use the keys in an RSA (symmetric) key pair. The public key has key handle 21. The private key has key handle 20.

When you run **getKeyInfo** on the private key (20), it returns the key owner (3) and crypto users (CUs) 4 and 5, with whom the key is shared.

```
Command: getKeyInfo -k 20

Cfm3GetKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Owned by user 3

also, shared to following 2 user(s):

    4
    5
```

When you run **getKeyInfo** on the public key (21), it returns only the key owner (3).

```
Command: getKeyInfo -k 21

Cfm3GetKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Owned by user 3
```

To confirm that user 4 can use the public key (and all public keys on the HSM), use the `-u` parameter of [findKey](#) (p. 55).

The output shows that user 4 can use both the public (21) and private (20) key in the key pair. User 4 can also use all other public keys and any private keys that they have created or that have been shared with them.

```
Command: findKey -u 4
Total number of keys present 8

number of keys matched from start index 0::7
11, 12, 262159, 262161, 262162, 19, 20, 21

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Example : Get the Quorum Authentication Value (m\_value) for a Key

This example shows how to get the `m_value` for a key, that is, the number of users in the quorum who must approve any cryptographic operations that use the key.

When quorum authentication is enabled on a key, a quorum of users must approve any cryptographic operations that use the key. To enable quorum authentication and set the quorum size, use the `-m_value` parameter when you create the key.

This command uses [genRSAKeyPair](#) (p. 63) to create an RSA key pair that is shared with user 4. It uses the `m_value` parameter to enable quorum authentication on the private key in the pair and set the quorum size to two users. The number of users must be large enough to provide the required approvals.

The output shows that the command created public key 27 and private key 28.

```
Command: genRSAKeyPair -m 2048 -e 195193 -l rsa_mofn -id rsa_mv2 -u 4 -m_value 2

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair:    public key handle: 27    private key handle: 28

Cluster Error Status
```

```
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

This command uses **getKeyInfo** to get information about the users of the private key. The output shows that the key is owned by user 3 and shared with user 4. It also shows that a quorum of two users must approve every cryptographic operation that uses the key.

```
Command: getKeyInfo -k 28

Cfm3GetKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Owned by user 3

also, shared to following 1 user(s):

    4
    2 Users need to approve to use/manage this key
```

## Parameters

### -h

Displays command line help for the command.

Required: Yes

### -k

Specifies the key handle of one key in the HSM. This parameter is required.

To find key handles, use the [findKey \(p. 85\)](#) command.

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [listUsers \(p. 85\)](#)
- [findKey \(p. 55\)](#)
- [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#)

## imSymKey

The `imSymKey` command in the `key_mgmt_util` tool imports a plaintext copy of a symmetric key from a file into the HSM. You can use it to import keys that you generate by any method outside of the HSM and keys that were exported from an HSM, such as the keys that the [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#), command writes to a file.

During the import process, `imSymKey` uses an AES key that you select (the *wrapping key*) to *wrap* (encrypt) and then *unwrap* (decrypt) the key to be imported. However, `imSymKey` works only on files that contain plaintext keys. To export and import encrypted keys, use the [wrapKey \(p. 91\)](#) and [unWrapKey \(p. 88\)](#) commands.

Also, the `imSymKey` command exports only symmetric keys. To import public keys, use `importPubKey`. To import private keys, use `importPrivateKey` or `wrapKey`.

Imported keys work very much like keys generated in the HSM. However, the value of the [OBJ\\_ATTR\\_LOCAL attribute \(p. 92\)](#) is zero, which indicates that it was not generated locally. The

`imSymKey` command does not have a parameter that shares the key with other users, but you can use the `shareKey` command in [cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 39\)](#) to share the key after it is imported.

After you import a key, be sure to mark or delete the key file. This command does not prevent you from importing the same key material multiple times. The result, multiple keys with distinct key handles and the same key material, make it difficult to track use of the key material and prevent it from exceeding its cryptographic limits.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
imSymKey -h

imSymKey -f <key-file>
          -w <wrapping-key-handle>
          -t <key-type>
          -l <label>
          [-id <key-ID>]
          [-sess]
          [-wk <wrapping-key-file> ]
          [-attest]
          [-min_srv <minimum-number-of-servers>]
          [-timeout <number-of-seconds> ]
```

## Examples

These examples show how to use `imSymKey` to import symmetric keys into your HSMs.

### Example : Import an AES Symmetric Key

This example uses `imSymKey` to import an AES symmetric key into the HSMs.

The first command uses OpenSSL to generate a random 256-bit AES symmetric key. It saves the key in the `aes256.key` file.

```
$ openssl rand -out aes256-forImport.key 32
```

The second command uses `imSymKey` to import the AES key from the `aes256.key` file into the HSMs. It uses key 20, an AES key in the HSM, as the wrapping key and it specifies a label of `imported`. Unlike the ID, the label does not need to be unique in the cluster. The value of the `-t` (type) parameter is 31, which represents AES.

The output shows that the key in the file was wrapped and unwrapped, then imported into the HSM, where it was assigned the key handle 262180.

```
Command: imSymKey -f aes256.key -w 20 -t 31 -l imported

Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3CreateUnwrapTemplate returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3UnWrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Unwrapped. Key Handle: 262180

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

The next command uses [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) to get the OBJ\_ATTR\_LOCAL attribute ([attribute 355 \(p. 92\)](#)) of the newly imported key and writes it to the `attr_262180` file.

```
Command: getAttribute -o 262180 -a 355 -out attributes/attr_262180  
Attributes dumped into attributes/attr_262180_imported file  
  
Cfm3GetAttribute returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

When you examine the attribute file, you can see that the value of the OBJ\_ATTR\_LOCAL attribute is zero, which indicates that the key material was not generated in the HSM.

```
$ cat attributes/attr_262180_local  
OBJ_ATTR_LOCAL  
0x00000000
```

### Example : Move a Symmetric Key Between Clusters

This example shows how to use `exSymKey` and `imSymKey` to move a plaintext AES key between clusters. You might use a process like this one to create an AES wrapping that exists on the HSMs both clusters. Once the shared wrapping key is in place, you can use [wrapKey \(p. 91\)](#) and [unwrapKey \(p. 88\)](#) to move encrypted keys between the clusters.

The CU user who performs this operation must have permission to log in to the HSMs on both clusters.

The first command uses `exSymKey` to export key 14, a 32-bit AES key, from the cluster 1 into the `aes.key` file. It uses key 6, an AES key on the HSMs in cluster 1, as the wrapping key.

```
Command: exSymKey -k 14 -w 6 -out aes.key  
  
Cfm3WrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cfm3UnWrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Wrapped Symmetric Key written to file "aes.key"
```

The user then logs into `key_mgmt_util` in cluster 2 and runs an `imSymKey` command to import the key in the `aes.key` file into the HSMs in cluster 2. This command uses key 252152, an AES key on the HSMs in cluster 2, as the wrapping key.

Because the wrapping keys that `exSymKey` and `imSymKey` use wrap and immediately unwrap the target keys, the wrapping keys on the different clusters are not required to be the same.

The output shows that the key was successfully imported into cluster 2 and assigned a key handle of 21.

```
Command: imSymKey -f aes.key -w 262152 -t 31 -l xcluster  
  
Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cfm3CreateUnwrapTemplate returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cfm3UnWrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Symmetric Key Unwrapped. Key Handle: 21  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

When the process is complete, key 14 in cluster 1 has the same key material as key 21 in cluster 2. This lets you use the `wrapKey` command with wrapping key 14 to export an encrypted key from cluster 1, and then use `unWrapKey` with wrapping key 21 to import the encrypted key into cluster 2 without ever exposing the plaintext key.

### Example : Import a Session Key

This command uses the `-sess` parameters of `imSymKey` to import a 192-bit Triple DES key that is valid only in the current session.

The command uses the `-f` parameter to specify the file that contains the key to import, the `-t` parameter to specify the key type, and the `-w` parameter to specify the wrapping key. It uses the `-l` parameter to specify a label that categorizes the key and the `-id` parameter to create a friendly, but unique, identifier for the key. It also uses the `-attest` parameter to verify the firmware that is importing the key.

The output shows that the key was successfully wrapped and unwrapped, imported into the HSM, and assigned the key handle 37. Also, the attestation check passed, which indicates that the firmware has not been tampered.

```
Command: imSymKey -f 3des192.key -w 6 -t 21 -l temp -id test01 -sess -attest

Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3CreateUnwrapTemplate returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3UnWrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Unwrapped. Key Handle: 37

Attestation Check : [PASS]

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

Next, you can use the [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) or [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) commands to verify the attributes of the newly imported key. The following command uses `findKey` to verify that key 37 has the type, label, and ID specified by the command, and that it is a session key. As shown on line 5 of the output, `findKey` reports that the only key that matches all of the attributes is key 37.

```
Command: findKey -t 21 -l temp -id test01 -sess 1
Total number of keys present 1

number of keys matched from start index 0::0
37

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Parameters

**-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

**-f**

Specifies the file that contains that key to import.

The file must contain a plaintext copy of an AES or Triple DES key of the specified length. RC4 and DES keys are not valid on FIPS-mode HSMs.

- **AES**: 16, 24 or 32 bytes
- **Triple DES (3DES)**: 24 bytes

Required: Yes

**-w**

Specifies the key handle of the wrapping key. This parameter is required. To find key handles, use the [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) command.

A *wrapping key* is a key in the HSM that is used to encrypt ("wrap") and then decrypt ("unwrap") the key during the import process. Only AES keys can be used as wrapping keys.

You can use any AES key (of any size) as a wrapping key. Because the wrapping key wraps, and then immediately unwraps, the target key, you can use as session-only AES key as a wrapping key. To determine whether a key can be used as a wrapping key, use [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) to get the value of the `OBJ_ATTR_WRAP` attribute (262). To create a wrapping key, use [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) to create an AES key (type 31).

If you use the `-wk` parameter to specify an external wrapping key, the `-w` wrapping key is used to unwrap, but not to wrap, the key that is being imported.

**Note**

Key 4 is an unsupported internal key. We recommend that you use an AES key that you create and manage as the wrapping key.

Required: Yes

**-t**

Specifies the type of the symmetric key. Enter the constant that represents the key type. For example, to create an AES key, enter `-t 31`.

Valid values:

- 21: [Triple DES \(3DES\)](#).
- 31: [AES](#)

Required: Yes

**-l**

Specifies a user-defined label for the key. Type a string.

You can use any phrase that helps you to identify the key. Because the label does not have to be unique, you can use it to group and categorize keys.

Required: Yes

**-id**

Specifies a user-defined identifier for the key. Type a string that is unique in the cluster. The default is an empty string.

Default: No ID value.

Required: No

**-sess**

Creates a key that exists only in the current session. The key cannot be recovered after the session ends.

Use this parameter when you need a key only briefly, such as a wrapping key that encrypts, and then quickly decrypts, another key. Do not use a session key to encrypt data that you might need to decrypt after the session ends.

To change a session key to a persistent (token) key, use [setAttribute \(p. 86\)](#).

Default: The key is persistent.

Required: No

**-wk**

Use the AES key in the specified file to wrap the key that is being imported. Enter the path and name of a file that contains a plaintext AES key.

When you include this parameter, `importSymKey` uses the key in the `-wk` file to wrap the key being imported and it uses the key in the HSM that is specified by the `-w` parameter to unwrap it. The `-w` and `-wk` parameter values must resolve to the same plaintext key.

Default: Use the wrapping key on the HSM to unwrap.

Required: No

**-attest**

Runs an integrity check that verifies that the firmware on which the cluster runs has not been tampered with.

Default: No attestation check.

Required: No

**-min\_srv**

Specifies the minimum number of HSMs on which the key is synchronized before the value of the `-timeout` parameter expires. If the key is not synchronized to the specified number of servers in the time allotted, it is not created.

AWS CloudHSM automatically synchronizes every key to every HSM in the cluster. To speed up your process, set the value of `min_srv` to less than the number of HSMs in the cluster and set a low timeout value. Note, however, that some requests might not generate a key.

Default: 1

Required: No

**-timeout**

Specifies how long (in seconds) the command waits for a key to be synchronized to the number of HSMs specified by the `min_srv` parameter.

This parameter is valid only when the `min_srv` parameter is also used in the command.

Default: No timeout. The command waits indefinitely and returns only when the key is synchronized to the minimum number of servers.

Required: No

## Related Topics

- [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#)
- [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#)
- [wrapKey \(p. 91\)](#)
- [unWrapKey \(p. 88\)](#)
- [exportPrivateKey](#)
- [exportPubKey](#)

## listAttributes

The **listAttributes** command in `key_mgmt_util` lists the attributes of an AWS CloudHSM key and the constants that represent them. You use these constants to identify the attributes in [getAttribute \(p. 55\)](#) and [setAttribute \(p. 55\)](#) commands.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
listAttributes [-h]
```

## Example

This command lists the key attributes that you can get and change in `key_mgmt_util` and the constants that represent them. For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

Command: **listAttributes**

Description

=====

The following are all of the possible attribute values for `getAttribute`.

OBJ_ATTR_CLASS	= 0
OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN	= 1
OBJ_ATTR_PRIVATE	= 2
OBJ_ATTR_LABEL	= 3
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE	= 256
OBJ_ATTR_ID	= 258
OBJ_ATTR_SENSITIVE	= 259
OBJ_ATTR_ENCRYPT	= 260
OBJ_ATTR_DECRYPT	= 261
OBJ_ATTR_WRAP	= 262
OBJ_ATTR_UNWRAP	= 263
OBJ_ATTR_SIGN	= 264
OBJ_ATTR_VERIFY	= 266
OBJ_ATTR_LOCAL	= 355
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS	= 288
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS_BITS	= 289
OBJ_ATTR_PUBLIC_EXPONENT	= 290
OBJ_ATTR_VALUE_LEN	= 353
OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE	= 354
OBJ_ATTR_KCV	= 371

## Parameters

### -h

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#)
- [setAttribute \(p. 55\)](#)
- [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#)

## listUsers

The **listUsers** command in the `key_mgmt_util` gets the users in the HSM, along with their user type and other attributes.

The user commands in `key_mgmt_util`, **listUsers** and **getKeyInfo**, are read-only commands that crypto users (CUs) have permission to run. The remaining user management commands are part of `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`, which is typically run by a CO with user management permissions.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
listUsers
listUsers -h
```

## Example

This command lists the users of HSMs in the cluster and their attributes. You can use the `User ID` attribute to identify users in other commands, such as [findKey \(p. 55\)](#), [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#), and [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#).

```
Command: listUsers

      Number Of Users found 4

  Index      User ID  User Type  User Name  MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt  2FA
  1          1      PCO        admin      NO
0          NO
  2          2      AU         app_user   NO
0          NO
  3          3      CU         alice      YES
0          NO
  4          4      CU         bob        NO
0          NO
  5          5      CU         trent      YES
0          NO

Cfm3ListUsers returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

The output includes the following user attributes:

- **User ID:** Use the user ID to identify the user in `key_mgmt_util` and [cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 39\)](#) commands.
- **User type (p. 9):** Determines the operations that the user can perform on the HSM.
- **MofnPubKey:** Indicates whether the user has registered a key pair for signing approval tokens.
- **LoginFailureCnt:**
- **2FA:** Indicates that the user has enabled multi-factor authentication.

## Parameters

**-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [findKey \(p. 55\)](#)
- [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#)
- [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#)

## setAttribute

The **setAttribute** command in `key_mgmt_util` converts a key that is valid only in the current session to a persistent key that exists until you delete it. It does this by changing the value of the token attribute of the key (`OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN`) from false (0) to true (1).

Crypto users (CUs) can use the `setAttribute` command in `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` to change the label, wrap, unwrap, encrypt, and decrypt attributes.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
setAttribute -h  
  
setAttribute -o <object handle>  
             -a 1
```

## Example

This example shows how to convert a session key to a persistent key.

The first command uses the `-sess` parameter of [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) to create a 192-bit AES key that is valid only in the current session. The output shows that the key handle of the new session key is 262154.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 24 -l tmpAES -sess  
  
Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 262154

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

This command uses [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) to find the session keys in the current session. The output verifies that key 262154 is a session key.

```
Command: findKey -sess 1

Total number of keys present 1

number of keys matched from start index 0::0
262154

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

This command uses **setAttribute** to convert key 262154 from a session key to a persistent key. To do so, it changes the value of the token attribute (OBJ\_ATTR\_TOKEN) of the key from 0 (false) to 1 (true). For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

The command uses the **-o** parameter to specify the key handle (262154) and the **-a** parameter to specify the constant that represents the token attribute (1). When you run the command, it prompts you for a value for the token attribute. The only valid value is 1 (true); the value for a persistent key.

```
Command: setAttribute -o 262154 -a 1
This attribute is defined as a boolean value.
Enter the boolean attribute value (0 or 1):1

Cfm3SetAttribute returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

To confirm that key 262154 is now persistent, this command uses **findKey** to search for session keys (**-sess 1**) and persistent keys (**-sess 0**). This time, the command does not find any session keys, but it returns 262154 in the list of persistent keys.

```
Command: findKey -sess 1

Total number of keys present 0

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Command: findKey -sess 0

Total number of keys present 5

number of keys matched from start index 0::4
```

```
6, 7, 524296, 9, 262154
```

```
Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3FindKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Parameters

**-h**

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

**-o**

Specifies the key handle of the target key. You can specify only one key in each command. To get the key handle of a key, use [findKey \(p. 55\)](#).

Required: Yes

**-a**

Specifies the constant that represents the attribute that you want to change. The only valid value is 1, which represents the token attribute, `OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN`.

To get the attributes and their integer values, use [listAttributes \(p. 84\)](#).

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#)
- [listAttributes \(p. 84\)](#)
- [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#)

## unWrapKey

The **unWrapKey** command in the `key_mgmt_util` tool imports a wrapped (encrypted) symmetric or private key from a file into the HSM. It is designed to import encrypted keys from files that were created by the [wrapKey \(p. 91\)](#) command.

During the import process, **unWrapKey** uses an AES key on the HSM that you specify to unwrap (decrypt) the key in the file. Then it saves the key in the HSM with a key handle and the attributes that you specify. To export and import plaintext keys, use the [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#) and [imSymKey \(p. 78\)](#) commands.

Imported keys work very much like keys generated in the HSM. However, the value of the [OBJ\\_ATTR\\_LOCAL attribute \(p. 92\)](#) is zero, which indicates that it was not generated locally. The `unWrapKey` command does not have parameters that assign a label or share the key with other users, but you can use the `shareKey` command in [cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 39\)](#) to add those attributes after the key is imported.

After you import a key, be sure to mark or delete the key file. This command does not prevent you from importing the same key material multiple times. The result, multiple keys with distinct key handles and the same key material, make it difficult to track use of the key material and prevent it from exceeding its cryptographic limits.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start `key\_mgmt\_util`](#) (p. 43) and [login](#) (p. 43) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
unWrapKey -h

unWrapKey -f <key-file-name>
           -w <wrapping-key-handle> 4
           [-sess]
           [-min_srv <minimum-number-of-HSMs>]
           [-timeout <number-of-seconds> ]
           [-attest]
```

## Example

### Example

This command imports an wrapped (encrypted) copy of a Triple DES (3DES) symmetric key from the `3DES.key` file into the HSMs. To unwrap (decrypt) the key, the command uses the `-w` parameter to specify key 6, an AES key on the HSM. The AES key that unwraps during import must be the same key that wrapped during export, or a cryptographically identical copy.

The output shows that the key in the file was unwrapped and imported. The new key has key handle 29.

If you are using **unWrapKey** to move a key between clusters, you must first create an AES wrapping key that exists on both clusters. You can generate a key outside of the HSMs and then use `imSymKey` to import it to the HSMs on both cluster. Or, generate an AES key in the HSMs on one cluster, use [exSymKey](#) (p. 50) to export it in plaintext to a file. Then use `imSymKey` to import the plaintext key into the other cluster. Once the wrapping key is established on both clusters, you can use **wrapKey** and **unWrapKey** to move encrypted keys between clusters without ever exposing the plaintext key.

```
Command: unWrapKey -f 3DES.key -w 6

Cfm3UnWrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Key Unwrapped. Key Handle: 29

Cluster Error Status
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Parameters

### -h

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

### -f

Specifies the path and name of the file that contains the wrapped key.

Required: Yes

### -w

Specifies the wrapping key. Type the key handle of an AES key on the HSM. This parameter is required. To find key handles, use the [findKey](#) (p. 55) command.

To create a wrapping key, use [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) to create an AES key (type 31). To verify that a key can be used as a wrapping key, use [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) to get the value of the `OBJ_ATTR_WRAP` attribute, which is represented by constant 262.

**Note**

Key handle 4 represents an unsupported internal key. We recommend that you use an AES key that you create and manage as the wrapping key.

Required: Yes

**-sess**

Creates a key that exists only in the current session. The key cannot be recovered after the session ends.

Use this parameter when you need a key only briefly, such as a wrapping key that encrypts, and then quickly decrypts, another key. Do not use a session key to encrypt data that you might need to decrypt after the session ends.

To change a session key to a persistent (token) key, use [setAttribute \(p. 86\)](#).

Default: The key is persistent.

Required: No

**-min\_srv**

Specifies the minimum number of HSMs on which the key is synchronized before the value of the `-timeout` parameter expires. If the key is not synchronized to the specified number of servers in the time allotted, it is not created.

AWS CloudHSM automatically synchronizes every key to every HSM in the cluster. To speed up your process, set the value of `min_srv` to less than the number of HSMs in the cluster and set a low timeout value. Note, however, that some requests might not generate a key.

Default: 1

Required: No

**-timeout**

Specifies how long (in seconds) the command waits for a key to be synchronized to the number of HSMs specified by the `min_srv` parameter.

This parameter is valid only when the `min_srv` parameter is also used in the command.

Default: No timeout. The command waits indefinitely and returns only when the key is synchronized to the minimum number of servers.

Required: No

**-attest**

Runs an integrity check that verifies that the firmware on which the cluster runs has not been tampered with.

Default: No attestation check.

Required: No

## Related Topics

- [wrapKey \(p. 91\)](#)

- [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#)
- [imSymKey \(p. 78\)](#)

## wrapKey

The `wrapKey` command in `key_mgmt_util` exports an encrypted copy of a symmetric or private key from the HSM to a file on disk. When you run `wrapKey`, you specify the key to export, an AES key on the HSM to encrypt (wrap) the key to be exported, and the output file.

The `wrapKey` command writes the encrypted key to a file that you specify, but it does not remove the key from the HSM, change its [key attributes \(p. 92\)](#), or prevent you from using it in cryptographic operations. You can export the same key multiple times.

Only the owner of a key, that is, the CU user who created the key, can export it. Users who share the key can use it in cryptographic operations, but they cannot export it.

To import (and unwrap) the encrypted key from the file to an HSM, use [unWrapKey \(p. 88\)](#). To export a plaintext key from the HSM, use [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#). The [aesWrapUnwrap \(p. 45\)](#) command cannot decrypt (unwrap) keys that **wrapKey** encrypts.

Before you run any `key_mgmt_util` command, you must [start key\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 43\)](#) and [login \(p. 43\)](#) to the HSM as a crypto user (CU).

## Syntax

```
wrapKey -h  
  
wrapKey -k <exported-key-handle>  
        -w <wrapping-key-handle>  
        -out <output-file>
```

## Example

### Example

This command exports a 192-bit Triple DES (3DES) symmetric key (key handle 7). It uses a 256-bit AES key in the HSM (key handle 14) to wrap key 7. Then it writes the encrypted 3DES key to the `3DES-encrypted.key` file.

The output shows that key 7 (the 3DES key) was successfully wrapped and written to the specified file. The encrypted key is 307 bytes long.

```
Command: wrapKey -k 7 -w 14 -out 3DES-encrypted.key  
  
Key Wrapped.  
  
Wrapped Key written to file "3DES-encrypted.key length 307  
  
Cfm2WrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Parameters

### -h

Displays help for the command.

Required: Yes

**-k**

Specifies the key handle of the key to export. Type the key handle of a symmetric or private key that you own. To find key handles, use the [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) command.

To verify that a key can be exported, use the [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) command to get the value of the `OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE` attribute, which is represented by constant 354. For help interpreting the key attributes, see the [Key Attribute Reference \(p. 92\)](#).

Also, you can export only keys that you own. To find the owner of a key, use the [getKeyInfo \(p. 76\)](#) command.

Required: Yes

**-w**

Specifies the wrapping key. Type the key handle of an AES key on the HSM. This parameter is required. To find key handles, use the [findKey \(p. 55\)](#) command.

To create a wrapping key, use [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) to create an AES key (type 31). To verify that a key can be used as a wrapping key, use [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#) to get the value of the `OBJ_ATTR_WRAP` attribute, which is represented by constant 262.

**Note**

Key handle 4 represents an unsupported internal key. We recommend that you use an AES key that you create and manage as the wrapping key.

Required: Yes

**-out**

Specifies the path and name of the output file. When the command succeeds, this file contains an encrypted copy of the exported key. If the file already exists, the command overwrites it without warning.

Required: Yes

## Related Topics

- [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#)
- [imSymKey \(p. 78\)](#)
- [unWrapKey \(p. 88\)](#)

## Key Attribute Reference

The `key_mgmt_util` commands use constants to represent the attributes of keys in an HSM. This topic can help you to identify the attributes, find the constants that represent them in commands, and understand their values.

You set the attributes of a key when you create it. To change the token attribute, which indicates whether a key is persistent or exists only in the session, use the [setAttribute \(p. 86\)](#) command in `key_mgmt_util`. To change the label, wrap, unwrap, encrypt, or decrypt attributes, use the `setAttribute` command in `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`.

To get a list of attributes and their constants, use [listAttributes \(p. 84\)](#). To get the attribute values for a key, use [getAttribute \(p. 73\)](#).

The following table lists the key attributes, their constants, and their valid values.

Attribute	Constant	Values
OBJ_ATTR_CLASS	0	<p><b>2:</b> Public key in a public–private key pair.</p> <p><b>3:</b> Private key in a public–private key pair.</p> <p><b>4:</b> Secret (symmetric) key.</p>
OBJ_ATTR_TOKEN	1	<p><b>0:</b> False. Session key.</p> <p><b>1:</b> True. Persistent key.</p>
OBJ_ATTR_PRIVATE	2	<p><b>0:</b> False.</p> <p><b>1:</b> True. Private key in a public–private key pair.</p>
OBJ_ATTR_LABEL	3	User-defined string. It does not have to be unique in the cluster.
OBJ_ATTR_KEY_TYPE	256	<p><b>0:</b> RSA.</p> <p><b>1:</b> DSA.</p> <p><b>3:</b> EC.</p> <p><b>16:</b> Generic secret.</p> <p><b>18:</b> RC4.</p> <p><b>21:</b> Triple DES (3DES).</p> <p><b>31:</b> AES.</p>
OBJ_ATTR_ID	258	User-defined string. Must be unique in the cluster. The default is an empty string.
OBJ_ATTR_SENSITIVE	259	<p><b>0:</b> False. Public key in a public–private key pair.</p> <p><b>1:</b> True.</p>
OBJ_ATTR_ENCRYPT	260	<p><b>0:</b> False.</p> <p><b>1:</b> True. The key can be used to encrypt data.</p>
OBJ_ATTR_DECRYPT	261	<p><b>0:</b> False.</p> <p><b>1:</b> True. The key can be used to decrypt data.</p>
OBJ_ATTR_WRAP	262	<p><b>0:</b> False.</p> <p><b>1:</b> True. The key can be used to encrypt keys.</p>

Attribute	Constant	Values
OBJ_ATTR_UNWRAP	263	<b>0:</b> False. <b>1:</b> True. The key can be used to decrypt keys.
OBJ_ATTR_SIGN	264	<b>0:</b> False. <b>1:</b> True. The key can be used for signing (private keys).
OBJ_ATTR_VERIFY	266	<b>0:</b> False. <b>1:</b> True. The key can be used for verification (public keys).
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS	288	The modulus that was used to generate an RSA key pair.  For other key types, this attribute does not exist.
OBJ_ATTR_MODULUS_BITS	289	The length of the modulus used to generate an RSA key pair.  For other key types, this attribute does not exist.
OBJ_ATTR_PUBLIC_EXPONENT	290	The public exponent used to generate an RSA key pair.  For other key types, this attribute does not exist.
OBJ_ATTR_VALUE_LEN	353	Key length in bits.
OBJ_ATTR_EXTRACTABLE	354	<b>0:</b> False. <b>1:</b> True. The key can be exported from the HSMs.
OBJ_ATTR_LOCAL	355	<b>0:</b> False. The key was imported into the HSMs. <b>1:</b> True.
OBJ_ATTR_KCV	371	Key check value of the key. For more information, see <a href="#">Additional Details (p. 94)</a> .
OBJ_ATTR_ALL	512	Represents all attributes.

## Additional Details

### Key check value (kcv)

The *key check value* (KCV) is an 8-byte hash or checksum of a key. The HSM calculates a KCV when it generates the key. You can also calculate a KCV outside of the HSM, such as after you export a key.

You can then compare the KCV values to confirm the identity and integrity of the key. To get the KCV of a key, use [getAttribute](#) (p. 73).

AWS CloudHSM uses the following standard method to generate a key check value:

- **Symmetric keys:** First 8 bytes of the result of encrypting 16 zero-filled bytes with the key.
- **Asymmetric key pairs:** First 8 bytes of the modulus hash.

# Managing HSM Users and Keys in AWS CloudHSM

Before you can use your AWS CloudHSM cluster for cryptoprocessing, you must create users and keys on the HSMs in your cluster. See the following topics for more information about using the AWS CloudHSM command line tools to manage HSM users and keys. You can also learn how to use quorum authentication (also known as M of N access control).

## Topics

- [Managing HSM Users in AWS CloudHSM \(p. 96\)](#)
- [Managing Keys in AWS CloudHSM \(p. 99\)](#)
- [Enforcing Quorum Authentication \(M of N Access Control\) \(p. 104\)](#)

## Managing HSM Users in AWS CloudHSM

To manage users on the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster, use the AWS CloudHSM command line tool known as `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`. Before you can manage users, you must start `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`, enable end-to-end encryption, and log in to the HSMs. For more information, see [Getting Started with cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util \(p. 39\)](#).

To manage HSM users, log in to the HSM with the user name and password of a [crypto officer \(p. 9\)](#) (CO). Only COs can manage other users. The HSM contains a default CO named `admin`. You set this user's password when you [activated the cluster \(p. 28\)](#).

## Topics

- [Create Users \(p. 96\)](#)
- [List Users \(p. 97\)](#)
- [Change a User's Password \(p. 98\)](#)
- [Delete Users \(p. 98\)](#)

## Create Users

Use the `createUser` command to create a user on the HSM. The following examples create new CO and CU users, respectively. For information about user types, see [HSM Users \(p. 9\)](#).

```
aws-cloudhsm>createUser CO example_officer <password>
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Creating User example_officer(CO) on 3 nodes
```

```
aws-cloudhsm>createUser CU example_user <password>
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
```

```
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****
Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Creating User example_user(CU) on 3 nodes
```

The following shows the syntax for the **createUser** command. User types and passwords are case-sensitive, but user names are not.

```
aws-cloudhsm>createUser <user type> <user name> <password>
```

## List Users

Use the **listUsers** command to list the users on each HSM in the cluster. All [HSM user types \(p. 9\)](#) can use this command; it's not restricted to COs.

The PCO is the first ("primary") CO created on each HSM. It has the same permissions on the HSM as any other CO.

```
aws-cloudhsm>listUsers
Users on server 0(10.0.2.9):
Number of users found:4

  User Id      User Type      User Name      MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt 2FA
  1           PCO           admin          NO
  0           NO
  2           AU           app_user      NO
  0           NO
  3           CO           example_officer NO
  0           NO
  4           CU           example_user  NO
  0           NO
Users on server 1(10.0.3.11):
Number of users found:4

  User Id      User Type      User Name      MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt 2FA
  1           PCO           admin          NO
  0           NO
  2           AU           app_user      NO
  0           NO
  3           CO           example_officer NO
  0           NO
  4           CU           example_user  NO
  0           NO
Users on server 2(10.0.1.12):
Number of users found:4

  User Id      User Type      User Name      MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt 2FA
  1           PCO           admin          NO
  0           NO
  2           AU           app_user      NO
  0           NO
  3           CO           example_officer NO
  0           NO
  4           CU           example_user  NO
  0           NO
```

## Change a User's Password

Use the **changePswd** command to change the password for the specified user. All [HSM user types \(p. 9\)](#) can issue this command, but only COs can change the password for other users. Crypto users (CUs) and appliance users (AUs) can change only their own password. The following examples change the password for the CO and CU users that were created in the [Create Users \(p. 96\)](#) examples.

```
aws-cloudhsm>changePswd CO example_officer <new password>
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Changing password for example_officer(CO) on 3 nodes
```

```
aws-cloudhsm>changePswd CU example_user <new password>
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Changing password for example_user(CU) on 3 nodes
```

The following shows the syntax for the **changePswd** command. User types and passwords are case-sensitive, but user names are not.

```
aws-cloudhsm>changePswd <user type> <user name> <new password>
```

## Delete Users

Use the **deleteUser** command to delete a user. The following examples delete the CO and CU users that were created in the [Create Users \(p. 96\)](#) examples.

```
aws-cloudhsm>deleteUser CO example_officer
Deleting user example_officer(CO) on 3 nodes
deleteUser success on server 0(10.0.2.9)
deleteUser success on server 1(10.0.3.11)
deleteUser success on server 2(10.0.1.12)
```

```
aws-cloudhsm>deleteUser CU example_user
Deleting user example_user(CU) on 3 nodes
deleteUser success on server 0(10.0.2.9)
deleteUser success on server 1(10.0.3.11)
deleteUser success on server 2(10.0.1.12)
```

The following shows the syntax for the **deleteUser** command.

```
aws-cloudhsm>deleteUser <user type> <user name>
```

# Managing Keys in AWS CloudHSM

To manage keys on the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster, use the [key\\_mgmt\\_util](#) (p. 42) command line tool. Before you can manage keys, you must start the AWS CloudHSM client, start `key_mgmt_util`, and log in to the HSMs.

To manage keys, [log in to the HSM](#) (p. 43) with the user name and password of a crypto user (CU). Only CUs can create keys. Keys are inherently owned and managed by the CU who created them.

## Topics

- [Generate Keys](#) (p. 99)
- [Import Keys](#) (p. 100)
- [Export Keys](#) (p. 101)
- [Delete Keys](#) (p. 103)
- [Share and Unshare Keys](#) (p. 103)

## Generate Keys

To generate keys on the HSM, use the command that corresponds to the type of key that you want to generate.

### Generate Symmetric Keys

Use the [genSymKey](#) (p. 67) command to generate AES, triple DES, and other types of symmetric keys. To see all available options, use the `genSymKey -h` command.

The following example creates a 256-bit AES key.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 32 -l aes256
Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 524295

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

### Generate RSA Key Pairs

To generate an RSA key pair, use the [genRSAKeyPair](#) (p. 63) command. To see all available options, use the `genRSAKeyPair -h` command.

The following example generates an RSA 2048-bit key pair.

```
Command: genRSAKeyPair -m 2048 -e 65537 -l rsa2048
Cfm3GenerateKeyPair returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair: public key handle: 524294 private key handle: 524296

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Generate ECC (Elliptic Curve Cryptography) Key Pairs

To generate an ECC key pair, use the **genECKeyPair** command. To see all available options, including a list of the supported elliptic curves, use the **genECKeyPair -h** command.

The following example generates an ECC key pair using the P-384 elliptic curve defined in [NIST FIPS publication 186-4](#).

```
Command: genECKeyPair -i 14 -l ecc-p384
Cfm3GenerateKeyPair returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3GenerateKeyPair:   public key handle: 524297   private key handle: 524298

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Import Keys

To import secret keys—that is, symmetric keys and asymmetric private keys—into the HSM, you must first create a wrapping key on the HSM. You can import public keys directly without a wrapping key.

### Import Secret Keys

Complete the following steps to import a secret key. Before you import a secret key, save it to a file. Save symmetric keys as raw bytes, and asymmetric private keys in PEM format.

This example shows how to import a plaintext secret key from a file into the HSM. To import an encrypted key from a file into the HSM, use the [unWrapKey \(p. 88\)](#) command.

#### To import a secret key

1. Use the [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) command to create a wrapping key. The following command creates a 128-bit AES wrapping key that is valid only for the current session. You can use a session key or a persistent key as a wrapping key.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 16 -sess -l import-wrapping-key
Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 524299

Cluster Error Status
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

2. Use one of the following commands, depending on the type of secret key that you are importing.
  - To import a symmetric key, use the **imSymKey** command. The following command imports an AES key from a file named `aes256.key` using the wrapping key created in the previous step. To see all available options, use the **imSymKey -h** command.

```
Command: imSymKey -f aes256.key -t 31 -l aes256-imported -w 524299
Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cfm3CreateUnwrapTemplate returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Cfm3UnWrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Symmetric Key Unwrapped. Key Handle: 524300  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

- To import an asymmetric private key, use the **importPrivateKey** command. The following command imports a private key from a file named `rsa2048.key` using the wrapping key created in the previous step. To see all available options, use the **importPrivateKey -h** command.

```
Command: importPrivateKey -f rsa2048.key -l rsa2048-imported -w 524299  
BER encoded key length is 1216  
  
Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cfm3CreateUnwrapTemplate returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cfm3UnWrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Private Key Unwrapped. Key Handle: 524301  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Import Public Keys

Use the **importPubKey** command to import a public key. To see all available options, use the **importPubKey -h** command.

The following example imports an RSA public key from a file named `rsa2048.pub`.

```
Command: importPubKey -f rsa2048.pub -l rsa2048-public-imported  
Cfm3CreatePublicKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Public Key Handle: 524302  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Export Keys

To export secret keys—that is, symmetric keys and asymmetric private keys—from the HSM, you must first create a wrapping key. You can export public keys directly without a wrapping key.

Only the key owner can export a key. Users with whom the key is shared can use the key in cryptographic operations, but they cannot export it. When running this example, be sure to export a key that you created.

### Important

The **exSymKey** (p. 50) command writes a plaintext (unencrypted) copy of the secret key to a file. The export process requires a wrapping key, but the key in the file is **not** a wrapped key. To export a wrapped (encrypted) copy of a key, use the **wrapKey** (p. 91) command.

## Export Secret Keys

Complete the following steps to export a secret key.

### To export a secret key

1. Use the [genSymKey \(p. 67\)](#) command to create a wrapping key. The following command creates a 128-bit AES wrapping key that is valid only for the current session.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 16 -sess -l export-wrapping-key  
Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 524304  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

2. Use one of the following commands, depending on the type of secret key that you are exporting.
  - To export a symmetric key, use the [exSymKey \(p. 50\)](#) command. The following command exports an AES key to a file named `aes256.key.exp`. To see all available options, use the **exSymKey -h** command.

```
Command: exSymKey -k 524295 -out aes256.key.exp -w 524304  
Cfm3WrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cfm3UnWrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Wrapped Symmetric Key written to file "aes256.key.exp"
```

#### Note

The command's output says that a "Wrapped Symmetric Key" is written to the output file. However, the output file contains a plaintext (not wrapped) key. To export a wrapped (encrypted) key to a file, use the [wrapKey \(p. 91\)](#) command.

- To export a private key, use the **exportPrivateKey** command. The following command exports a private key to a file named `rsa2048.key.exp`. To see all available options, use the **exportPrivateKey -h** command.

```
Command: exportPrivateKey -k 524296 -out rsa2048.key.exp -w 524304  
Cfm3WrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
Cfm3UnWrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS  
  
PEM formatted private key is written to rsa2048.key.exp
```

## Export Public Keys

Use the **exportPubKey** command to export a public key. To see all available options, use the **exportPubKey -h** command.

The following example exports an RSA public key to a file named `rsa2048.pub.exp`.

```
Command: exportPubKey -k 524294 -out rsa2048.pub.exp  
PEM formatted public key is written to rsa2048.pub.key
```

```
Cfm3ExportPubKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Delete Keys

Use the `deleteKey` (p. 47) command to delete a key, as in the following example. Only the key owner can delete a key.

```
Command: deleteKey -k 524300
Cfm3DeleteKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS

Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 1 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Node id 2 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

## Share and Unshare Keys

In AWS CloudHSM, the CU who creates the key owns it. The owner manages the key, can export and delete it, and can use the key in cryptographic operations. The owner can also share the key with other CU users. Users with whom the key is shared can use the key in cryptographic operations, but they cannot export or delete the key, or share it with other users.

You can share keys with other CU users when you create the key, such as by using the `-u` parameter of the `genSymKey` (p. 67) or `genRSAKeyPair` (p. 63) commands. To share existing keys with a different HSM user, use the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` (p. 39) command line tool. This is different from most of the tasks documented in this section, which use the `key_mgmt_util` (p. 42) command line tool.

Before you can share a key, you must start `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`, enable end-to-end encryption, and log in to the HSMs. To share a key, log in to the HSM as the crypto user (CU) that owns the key. Only key owners can share a key.

Use the `shareKey` command to share or unshare a key, specifying the handle of the key and the IDs of the user or users. To share or unshare with more than one user, specify a comma-separated list of user IDs. To share a key, use 1 as the command's last parameter, as in the following example. To unshare, use 0.

```
aws-cloudhsm>shareKey 524295 4 1
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
shareKey success on server 0(10.0.2.9)
shareKey success on server 1(10.0.3.11)
shareKey success on server 2(10.0.1.12)
```

The following shows the syntax for the `shareKey` command.

```
aws-cloudhsm>shareKey <key handle> <user ID> <Boolean: 1 for share, 0 for unshare>
```

## Enforcing Quorum Authentication (M of N Access Control)

The HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster support quorum authentication, which is also known as M of N access control. With quorum authentication, no single user on the HSM can do quorum-controlled operations on the HSM. Instead, a minimum number of HSM users (at least 2) must cooperate to do these operations. With quorum authentication, you can add an extra layer of protection by requiring approvals from more than one HSM user.

Quorum authentication can control the following operations:

- HSM user management by [crypto officers \(COs\) \(p. 9\)](#) – Creating and deleting HSM users, and changing a different HSM user's password. For more information, see [Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers \(p. 109\)](#).
- Cryptographic operations by [crypto users \(CUs\) \(p. 9\)](#) – For example:
  - Using asymmetric private keys on the HSM to cryptographically sign messages.
  - Using AES symmetric keys on the HSM for AES wrap and unwrap.

The following topics provide more information about quorum authentication in AWS CloudHSM.

### Topics

- [Overview of Quorum Authentication \(p. 104\)](#)
- [Additional Details about Quorum Authentication \(p. 105\)](#)
- [Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers: First Time Setup \(p. 105\)](#)
- [Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers \(p. 109\)](#)
- [Change the Quorum Minimum Value for Crypto Officers \(p. 115\)](#)

## Overview of Quorum Authentication

The following steps summarize the quorum authentication processes. For the specific steps and tools, see [Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers \(p. 109\)](#).

1. Each HSM user creates an asymmetric key for signing. He or she does this outside of the HSM, taking care to protect the key appropriately.
2. Each HSM user logs in to the HSM and registers the public part of his or her signing key (the public key) with the HSM.
3. When an HSM user wants to do a quorum-controlled operation, he or she logs in to the HSM and gets a *quorum token*.
4. The HSM user gives the quorum token to one or more other HSM users and asks for their approval.
5. The other HSM users approve by using their keys to cryptographically sign the quorum token. This occurs outside the HSM.
6. When the HSM user has the required number of approvals, he or she logs in to the HSM and gives the quorum token and approvals (signatures) to the HSM.
7. The HSM uses the registered public keys of each signer to verify the signatures. If the signatures are valid, the HSM approves the token.
8. The HSM user can now do a quorum-controlled operation.

## Additional Details about Quorum Authentication

Note the following additional information about using quorum authentication in AWS CloudHSM.

- An HSM user can sign his or her own quorum token—that is, the requesting user can provide one of the required approvals for quorum authentication.
- You choose the minimum number of quorum approvers for quorum-controlled operations. The smallest number you can choose is two (2). For HSM user management operations by COs, the largest number you can choose is twenty (20). For cryptographic operations by CUs, the largest number you can choose is eight (8).
- The HSM can store up to 1024 quorum tokens. If the HSM already has 1024 tokens when you try to create a new one, the HSM purges one of the expired tokens. By default, tokens expire ten minutes after their creation.

## Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers: First Time Setup

The following topics describe the steps that you must complete to configure your HSM so that [crypto officers \(COs\)](#) (p. 9) can use quorum authentication. You need to do these steps only once when you first configure quorum authentication for COs. After you complete these steps, see [Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers](#) (p. 109).

### Topics

- [Prerequisites](#) (p. 105)
- [Create and Register a Key for Signing](#) (p. 106)
- [Set the Quorum Minimum Value on the HSM](#) (p. 108)

## Prerequisites

To understand this example, you should be familiar with the [cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util command line tool](#) (p. 39). In this example, the AWS CloudHSM cluster has two HSMs, each with the same COs, as shown in the following output from the `listUsers` command. For more information about creating users, see [Managing HSM Users](#) (p. 96).

```
aws-cloudhsm>listUsers
Users on server 0(10.0.2.14):
Number of users found:7

  User Id      User Type      User Name      MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt  2FA
    1          PCO          admin          NO
    0          NO
    2          AU          app_user       NO
    0          NO
    3          CO          officer1       NO
    0          NO
    4          CO          officer2       NO
    0          NO
    5          CO          officer3       NO
    0          NO
    6          CO          officer4       NO
    0          NO
    7          CO          officer5       NO
    0          NO
```

```
Users on server 1(10.0.1.4):  
Number of users found:7
```

User Id	User Type	User Name	MofnPubKey
1	PCO	admin	NO
2	AU	app_user	NO
3	CO	officer1	NO
4	CO	officer2	NO
5	CO	officer3	NO
6	CO	officer4	NO
7	CO	officer5	NO

## Create and Register a Key for Signing

To use quorum authentication, each CO must create an asymmetric key for signing (a *signing key*). This is done outside of the HSM.

There are many different ways to create and protect a personal signing key. The following example shows how to do it with [OpenSSL](#).

### Example – Create a personal signing key with OpenSSL

The following example demonstrates how to use OpenSSL to create a 2048-bit RSA key that is protected by a pass phrase. To use this example, replace *officer1.key* with the name of the file where you want to store the key.

```
$ openssl genrsa -out officer1.key -aes256 2048  
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus  
.....+++  
.+++  
e is 65537 (0x10001)  
Enter pass phrase for officer1.key:  
Verifying - Enter pass phrase for officer1.key:
```

Each CO should create his or her own key.

After creating a key, the CO must register the public part of the key (the public key) with the HSM.

### To register a public key with the HSM

1. Use the following command to start the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/cloudhsm_mgmt_util /opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg
```

2. Use the `enable_e2e` command to establish end-to-end encrypted communication.
3. Use the `loginHSM` command to log in to the HSM as a CO. For more information, see [Log in to the HSMs \(p. 41\)](#).
4. Use the `registerMofnPubKey` command to register the public key. For more information, see the following example or use the `help registerMofnPubKey` command.

### Example – Register a public key with the HSM

The following example shows how to use the `registerMofnPubKey` command in the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool to register a CO's public key with the HSM. To use this command, the CO must be logged in to the HSM. Replace these values with your own:

- `key_match_string` – An arbitrary string that is used to match the public and private keys. You can use any string for this value. The `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool encrypts this string with the private key, and then sends the encrypted blob and the plaintext string to the HSM. The HSM uses the public key to decrypt the encrypted blob, and then compares the decrypted string to the plaintext string. If the strings match, the HSM registers the public key; otherwise it doesn't.
- `officer1` – The user name of the CO who is registering the public key. This must be the same CO who is logged in to the HSM and is running this command.
- `officer1.key` – The name of the file that contains the CO's key. This file must contain the complete key (not just the public part) because the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool uses the private key to encrypt the `key match string`.

When prompted, type the pass phrase that protects the CO's key.

```
aws-cloudhsm>registerMofnPubKey CO key_match_string officer1 officer1.key
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****
Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Enter PEM pass phrase:
registerMofnPubKey success on server 0(10.0.2.14)
registerMofnPubKey success on server 1(10.0.1.4)
```

Each CO must register his or her public key with the HSM. After all COs register their public keys, the output from the `listUsers` command shows this in the `MofnPubKey` column, as shown in the following example.

```
aws-cloudhsm>listUsers
Users on server 0(10.0.2.14):
Number of users found:7
```

User Id	User Type	User Name	MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt	2FA		
1	PCO	admin	NO
0	NO		
2	AU	app_user	NO
0	NO		
3	CO	officer1	YES
0	NO		
4	CO	officer2	YES
0	NO		
5	CO	officer3	YES
0	NO		
6	CO	officer4	YES
0	NO		
7	CO	officer5	YES
0	NO		

```
Users on server 1(10.0.1.4):
Number of users found:7
```

User Id	User Type	User Name	MofnPubKey
1	PCO	admin	NO
0	NO		
2	AU	app_user	NO
0	NO		
3	CO	officer1	YES
0	NO		
4	CO	officer2	YES
0	NO		
5	CO	officer3	YES
0	NO		
6	CO	officer4	YES
0	NO		
7	CO	officer5	YES
0	NO		

## Set the Quorum Minimum Value on the HSM

To use quorum authentication for COs, a CO must log in to the HSM and then set the *quorum minimum value*, also known as the *m value*. This is the minimum number of CO approvals that are required to perform HSM user management operations. Any CO on the HSM can set the quorum minimum value, including COs that have not registered a key for signing. You can change the quorum minimum value at any time; for more information, see [Change the Quorum Value for Crypto Officers \(p. 115\)](#).

### To set the quorum minimum value on the HSM

1. Use the following command to start the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/cloudhsm_mgmt_util /opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg
```

2. Use the `enable_e2e` command to establish end-to-end encrypted communication.
3. Use the `loginHSM` command to log in to the HSM as a CO. For more information, see [Log in to the HSMs \(p. 41\)](#).
4. Use the `setMValue` command to set the quorum minimum value. For more information, see the following example or use the `help setMValue` command.

### Example – Set the quorum minimum value on the HSM

This example uses a quorum minimum value of two. You can choose any value from two to twenty, up to the total number of COs on the HSM. In this example, the HSM has six COs (the [PCO user \(p. 9\)](#) is the same as a CO), so the maximum possible value is six.

To use the following example command, replace the final number (`2`) with the preferred quorum minimum value.

```
aws-cloudhsm>setMValue 3 2
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Setting M Value(2) for 3 on 2 nodes
```

In the preceding example, the first number (`3`) identifies the *HSM service* whose quorum minimum value you are setting.

The following table lists the HSM service identifiers along with their names, descriptions, and the commands that are included in the service.

Service Identifier	Service Name	Service Description	HSM Commands
3	USER_MGMT	HSM user management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>createUser</b></li> <li>• <b>deleteUser</b></li> <li>• <b>changePswd</b> (applies only when changing the password of a different HSM user)</li> </ul>
4	MISC_CO	Miscellaneous CO service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>setMValue</b></li> </ul>

To get the quorum minimum value for a service, use the **getMValue** command, as in the following example.

```
aws-cloudhsm>getMValue 3
MValue of service 3[USER_MGMT] on server 0 : [2]
MValue of service 3[USER_MGMT] on server 1 : [2]
```

The output from the preceding **getMValue** command shows that the quorum minimum value for HSM user management operations (service 3) is now two.

After you complete these steps, see [Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers \(p. 109\)](#).

## Using Quorum Authentication for Crypto Officers

A [crypto officer \(CO\) \(p. 9\)](#) on the HSM can configure quorum authentication for the following operations on the HSM:

- Creating HSM users
- Deleting HSM users
- Changing another HSM user's password

After the HSM is configured for quorum authentication, COs cannot perform HSM user management operations on their own. The following example shows the output when a CO attempts to create a new user on the HSM. The command fails with a **RET\_MXN\_AUTH\_FAILED** error, which indicates that quorum authentication failed.

```
aws-cloudhsm>createUser CU user1 password
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Creating User user1(CU) on 2 nodes
createUser failed: RET_MXN_AUTH_FAILED
creating user on server 0(10.0.2.14) failed

Retry/Ignore/Abort?(R/I/A):A
```

To perform an HSM user management operation, a CO must complete the following tasks:

1. [Get a quorum token \(p. 110\)](#).
2. [Get approvals \(signatures\) from other COs \(p. 111\)](#).
3. [Approve the token on the HSM \(p. 111\)](#).
4. [Perform the HSM user management operation \(p. 113\)](#).

If you have not yet configured the HSM for quorum authentication for COs, do that now. For more information, see [First Time Setup for Crypto Officers \(p. 105\)](#).

## Get a Quorum Token

First the CO must use the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool to request a *quorum token*.

### To get a quorum token

1. Use the following command to start the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/cloudhsm_mgmt_util /opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg
```

2. Use the `enable_e2e` command to establish end-to-end encrypted communication.
3. Use the `loginHSM` command to log in to the HSM as a CO. For more information, see [Log in to the HSMs \(p. 41\)](#).
4. Use the `getToken` command to get a quorum token. For more information, see the following example or use the `help getToken` command.

### Example – Get a quorum token

This example gets a quorum token for the CO with user name `officer1` and saves the token to a file named `officer1.token`. To use the example command, replace these values with your own:

- `officer1` – The name of the CO who is getting the token. This must be the same CO who is logged in to the HSM and is running this command.
- `officer1.token` – The name of the file to use for storing the quorum token.

In the following command, `3` identifies the *service* for which you can use the token that you are getting. In this case, the token is for HSM user management operations (service `3`). For more information, see [Set the Quorum Minimum Value on the HSM \(p. 108\)](#).

```
aws-cloudhsm>getToken 3 officer1 officer1.token
getToken success on server 0(10.0.2.14)
Token:
Id:1
Service:3
Node:1
Key Handle:0
User:officer1
getToken success on server 1(10.0.1.4)
Token:
Id:1
Service:3
Node:0
Key Handle:0
User:officer1
```

## Get Signatures from Approving COs

A CO who has a quorum token must get the token approved by other COs. To give their approval, the other COs use their signing key to cryptographically sign the token. They do this outside the HSM.

There are many different ways to sign the token. The following example shows how to do it with [OpenSSL](#). To use a different signing tool, make sure that the tool uses the CO's private key (signing key) to sign a SHA-256 digest of the token.

### Example – Get signatures from approving COs

In this example, the CO that has the token (officer1) needs at least two approvals. The following example commands show how two COs can use OpenSSL to cryptographically sign the token.

In the first command, officer1 signs his or her own token. To use the following example commands, replace these values with your own:

- *officer1.key* and *officer2.key* – The name of the file that contains the CO's signing key.
- *officer1.token.sig1* and *officer1.token.sig2* – The name of the file to use for storing the signature. Make sure to save each signature in a different file.
- *officer1.token* – The name of the file that contains the token that the CO is signing.

```
$ openssl dgst -sha256 -sign officer1.key -out officer1.token.sig1 officer1.token
Enter pass phrase for officer1.key:
```

In the following command, officer2 signs the same token.

```
$ openssl dgst -sha256 -sign officer2.key -out officer1.token.sig2 officer1.token
Enter pass phrase for officer2.key:
```

## Approve the Signed Token on the HSM

After a CO gets the minimum number of approvals (signatures) from other COs, he or she must approve the signed token on the HSM.

### To approve the signed token on the HSM

1. Create a token approval file. For more information, see the following example.
2. Use the following command to start the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/cloudhsm_mgmt_util /opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg
```

3. Use the `enable_e2e` command to establish end-to-end encrypted communication.
4. Use the `loginHSM` command to log in to the HSM as a CO. For more information, see [Log in to the HSMs \(p. 41\)](#).
5. Use the `approveToken` command to approve the signed token, passing the token approval file. For more information, see the following example.

### Example – Create a token approval file and approve the signed token on the HSM

The token approval file is a text file in a particular format that the HSM requires. The file contains information about the token, its approvers, and the approvers' signatures. The following shows an example token approval file.

```
# For "Multi Token File Path", type the path to the file that contains
# the token. You can type the same value for "Token File Path", but
# that's not required. The "Token File Path" line is required in any
# case, regardless of whether you type a value.
Multi Token File Path = officer1.token;
Token File Path = ;

# Total number of approvals
Number of Approvals = 2;

# Approver 1
# Type the approver's type, name, and the path to the file that
# contains the approver's signature.
Approver Type = 2; # 2 for CO, 1 for CU
Approver Name = officer1;
Approval File = officer1.token.sig1;

# Approver 2
# Type the approver's type, name, and the path to the file that
# contains the approver's signature.
Approver Type = 2; # 2 for CO, 1 for CU
Approver Name = officer2;
Approval File = officer1.token.sig2;
```

After creating the token approval file, the CO uses the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool to log in to the HSM. The CO then uses the `approveToken` command to approve the token, as shown in the following example. Replace `approval.txt` with the name of the token approval file.

```
aws-cloudhsm>approveToken approval.txt
approveToken success on server 0(10.0.2.14)
approveToken success on server 1(10.0.1.4)
```

When this command succeeds, the HSM has approved the quorum token. To check the status of a token, use the `listTokens` command, as shown in the following example. The command's output shows that the token has the required number of approvals.

The token validity time indicates how long the token is guaranteed to persist on the HSM. Even after the token validity time elapses (zero seconds), you can still use the token.

```
aws-cloudhsm>listTokens

=====
      Server 0(10.0.2.14)
=====
----- Token - 0 -----
Token:
Id:1
Service:3
Node:1
Key Handle:0
User:officer1
Token Validity: 506 sec
Required num of approvers : 2
Current num of approvals : 2
Approver-0: officer1
Approver-1: officer2
Num of tokens = 1

=====
      Server 1(10.0.1.4)
=====
----- Token - 0 -----
```

```
Token:
Id:1
Service:3
Node:0
Key Handle:0
User:officer1
Token Validity: 506 sec
Required num of approvers : 2
Current num of approvals : 2
Approver-0: officer1
Approver-1: officer2
Num of tokens = 1

listTokens success
```

## Use the Token for User Management Operations

After a CO has a token with the required number of approvals, as shown in the previous section, the CO can perform one of the following HSM user management operations:

- Create an HSM user with the **createUser** command
- Delete an HSM user with the **deleteUser** command
- Change a different HSM user's password with the **changePswd** command

For more information about using these commands, see [Managing HSM Users \(p. 96\)](#).

The CO can use the token for only one operation. When that operation succeeds, the token is no longer valid. To do another HSM user management operation, the CO must get a new quorum token, get new signatures from approvers, and approve the new token on the HSM.

In the following example command, the CO creates a new user on the HSM.

```
aws-cloudhsm>createUser CU user1 password
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****
Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Creating User user1(CU) on 2 nodes
```

After the previous command succeeds, a subsequent **listUsers** command shows the new user.

```
aws-cloudhsm>listUsers
Users on server 0(10.0.2.14):
Number of users found:8

  User Id      User Type      User Name      MofnPubKey
LoginFailureCnt  2FA
    1          PCO          admin          NO
    0          NO
    2          AU          app_user       NO
    0          NO
    3          CO          officer1       YES
    0          NO
    4          CO          officer2       YES
    0          NO
```

```

      5          CO          officer3          YES
      0          NO
      6          CO          officer4          YES
      0          NO
      7          CO          officer5          YES
      0          NO
      8          CU          user1            NO
      0          NO
Users on server 1(10.0.1.4):
Number of users found:8

```

User Id	User Type	User Name	MofnPubKey
1	PCO	admin	NO
2	AU	app_user	NO
3	CO	officer1	YES
4	CO	officer2	YES
5	CO	officer3	YES
6	CO	officer4	YES
7	CO	officer5	YES
8	CU	user1	NO

If the CO tries to perform another HSM user management operation, it fails with a quorum authentication error, as shown in the following example.

```

aws-cloudhsm>deleteUser CU user1
Deleting user user1(CU) on 2 nodes
deleteUser failed: RET_MXN_AUTH_FAILED
deleteUser failed on server 0(10.0.2.14)

Retry/rollBack/Ignore?(R/B/I):I
deleteUser failed: RET_MXN_AUTH_FAILED
deleteUser failed on server 1(10.0.1.4)

Retry/rollBack/Ignore?(R/B/I):I

```

The **listTokens** command shows that the CO has no approved tokens, as shown in the following example. To perform another HSM user management operation, the CO must get a new quorum token, get new signatures from approvers, and approve the new token on the HSM.

```

aws-cloudhsm>listTokens

=====
      Server 0(10.0.2.14)
=====
Num of tokens = 0

=====
      Server 1(10.0.1.4)
=====
Num of tokens = 0

listTokens success

```

## Change the Quorum Minimum Value for Crypto Officers

After you [set the quorum minimum value \(p. 108\)](#) so that [crypto officers \(COs\) \(p. 9\)](#) can use quorum authentication, you might want to change the quorum minimum value. The HSM allows you to change the quorum minimum value only when the number of approvers is the same or higher than the current quorum minimum value. For example, if the quorum minimum value is two, at least two COs must approve to change the quorum minimum value.

To get quorum approval to change the quorum minimum value, you need a *quorum token* for the **setMValue** command (service 4). To get a quorum token for the **setMValue** command (service 4), the quorum minimum value for service 4 must be higher than one. This means that before you can change the quorum minimum value for COs (service 3), you might need to change the quorum minimum value for service 4.

The following table lists the HSM service identifiers along with their names, descriptions, and the commands that are included in the service.

Service Identifier	Service Name	Service Description	HSM Commands
3	USER_MGMT	HSM user management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>createUser</b></li><li>• <b>deleteUser</b></li><li>• <b>changePswd</b> (applies only when changing the password of a different HSM user)</li></ul>
4	MISC_CO	Miscellaneous CO service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>setMValue</b></li></ul>

### To change the quorum minimum value for crypto officers

1. Use the following command to start the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` command line tool.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/cloudhsm_mgmt_util /opt/cloudhsm/etc/cloudhsm_mgmt_util.cfg
```

2. Use the **enable\_e2e** command to establish end-to-end encrypted communication.
3. Use the **loginHSM** command to log in to the HSM as a CO. For more information, see [Log in to the HSMs \(p. 41\)](#).
4. Use the **getMValue** command to get the quorum minimum value for service 3. For more information, see the following example.
5. Use the **getMValue** command to get the quorum minimum value for service 4. For more information, see the following example.
6. If the quorum minimum value for service 4 is lower than the value for service 3, use the **setMValue** command to change the value for service 4. Change the value for service 4 to one that is the same or higher than the value for service 3. For more information, see the following example.
7. [Get a quorum token \(p. 110\)](#), taking care to specify service 4 as the service for which you can use the token.
8. [Get approvals \(signatures\) from other COs \(p. 111\)](#).
9. [Approve the token on the HSM \(p. 111\)](#).
10. Use the **setMValue** command to change quorum minimum value for service 3 (user management operations performed by COs).

### Example – Get quorum minimum values and change the value for service 4

The following example command shows that the quorum minimum value for service 3 is currently two.

```
aws-cloudhsm>getMValue 3
MValue of service 3[USER_MGMT] on server 0 : [2]
MValue of service 3[USER_MGMT] on server 1 : [2]
```

The following example command shows that the quorum minimum value for service 4 is currently one.

```
aws-cloudhsm>getMValue 4
MValue of service 4[MISC_CO] on server 0 : [1]
MValue of service 4[MISC_CO] on server 1 : [1]
```

To change the quorum minimum value for service 4, use the **setMValue** command, setting a value that is the same or higher than the value for service 3. The following example sets the quorum minimum value for service 4 to two (2), the same value that is set for service 3.

```
aws-cloudhsm>setMValue 4 2
*****CAUTION*****
This is a CRITICAL operation, should be done on all nodes in the
cluster. Cav server does NOT synchronize these changes with the
nodes on which this operation is not executed or failed, please
ensure this operation is executed on all nodes in the cluster.
*****

Do you want to continue(y/n)?y
Setting M Value(2) for 4 on 2 nodes
```

The following commands show that the quorum minimum value is now two for service 3 and service 4.

```
aws-cloudhsm>getMValue 3
MValue of service 3[USER_MGMT] on server 0 : [2]
MValue of service 3[USER_MGMT] on server 1 : [2]
```

```
aws-cloudhsm>getMValue 4
MValue of service 4[MISC_CO] on server 0 : [2]
MValue of service 4[MISC_CO] on server 1 : [2]
```

# Using the AWS CloudHSM Software Libraries

To use your AWS CloudHSM cluster for cryptoprocessing, you use the AWS CloudHSM software libraries to integrate your applications with the HSMs in your cluster. See the following topics for more information about the available software libraries.

## Topics

- [AWS CloudHSM Software Library for PKCS #11 \(p. 117\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Software Library for OpenSSL \(p. 122\)](#)
- [AWS CloudHSM Software Library for Java \(p. 123\)](#)

## AWS CloudHSM Software Library for PKCS #11

The AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 is a PKCS #11 standard implementation that communicates with the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster. The library supports PKCS #11 version 2.40, including the following key types, mechanisms, and APIs.

## Topics

- [Supported PKCS #11 Key Types \(p. 117\)](#)
- [Supported PKCS #11 Mechanisms \(p. 117\)](#)
- [Supported PKCS #11 APIs \(p. 119\)](#)
- [Install and Use the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for PKCS #11 \(p. 120\)](#)

## Supported PKCS #11 Key Types

The AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 supports the following key types.

- **RSA** – 2048-bit to 4096-bit RSA keys, in increments of 256 bits.
- **ECDSA** – Generate keys with the P-224, P-256, P-384, and P-521 curves. Only the P-256 and P-384 curves are supported for sign/verify.
- **AES** – 128, 192, and 256-bit AES keys.
- **Triple DES (3DES)** – 192-bit keys.
- **GENERIC\_SECRET** – 1 to 64 bytes.

## Supported PKCS #11 Mechanisms

The AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 supports the following PKCS #11 mechanisms.

### Generate, Create, Import Keys

- `CKM_AES_KEY_GEN`
- `CKM_DES3_KEY_GEN`

- CKM\_EC\_KEY\_PAIR\_GEN
- CKM\_GENERIC\_SECRET\_KEY\_GEN
- CKM\_RSA\_X9\_31\_KEY\_PAIR\_GEN

**Note**

This mechanism is functionally identical to the CKM\_RSA\_PKCS\_KEY\_PAIR\_GEN mechanism, but offers stronger guarantees for p and q generation. If you need the CKM\_RSA\_PKCS\_KEY\_PAIR\_GEN mechanism, use CKM\_RSA\_X9\_31\_KEY\_PAIR\_GEN.

**Sign/Verify**

- CKM\_RSA\_PKCS
- CKM\_RSA\_PKCS\_PSS
- CKM\_SHA256\_RSA\_PKCS
- CKM\_SHA224\_RSA\_PKCS
- CKM\_SHA384\_RSA\_PKCS
- CKM\_SHA512\_RSA\_PKCS
- CKM\_SHA1\_RSA\_PKCS\_PSS
- CKM\_SHA256\_RSA\_PKCS\_PSS
- CKM\_SHA224\_RSA\_PKCS\_PSS
- CKM\_SHA384\_RSA\_PKCS\_PSS
- CKM\_SHA512\_RSA\_PKCS\_PSS
- CKM\_MD5\_HMAC
- CKM\_SHA\_1\_HMAC
- CKM\_SHA224\_HMAC
- CKM\_SHA256\_HMAC
- CKM\_SHA384\_HMAC
- CKM\_SHA512\_HMAC
- CKM\_ECDSA
- CKM\_ECDSA\_SHA1
- CKM\_ECDSA\_SHA224
- CKM\_ECDSA\_SHA256
- CKM\_ECDSA\_SHA384
- CKM\_ECDSA\_SHA512

**Digest**

- CKM\_SHA1
- CKM\_SHA224
- CKM\_SHA256
- CKM\_SHA384
- CKM\_SHA512

**Encrypt/Decrypt**

- CKM\_AES\_CBC
- CKM\_AES\_CBC\_PAD

- CKM\_AES\_GCM

**Note**

When performing AES-GCM encryption, the HSM ignores the initialization vector (IV) in the request and uses an IV that it generates. The HSM writes the generated IV to the memory reference pointed to by the pAAD element of the CK\_GCM\_PARAMS parameters structure that you supply.

- CKM\_DES3\_CBC
- CKM\_DES3\_CBC\_PAD
- CKM\_RSA\_OAEP\_PAD
- CKM\_RSA\_PKCS

**Key Derive**

- CKM\_ECDH1\_DERIVE

**Key Wrap**

- CKM\_AES\_KEY\_WRAP

## Supported PKCS #11 APIs

The AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 supports the following PKCS #11 APIs.

- C\_CreateObject
- C\_Decrypt
- C\_DecryptFinal
- C\_DecryptInit
- C\_DecryptUpdate
- C\_DestroyObject
- C\_DigestInit
- C\_Digest
- C\_Encrypt
- C\_EncryptFinal
- C\_EncryptInit
- C\_EncryptUpdate
- C\_FindObjects
- C\_FindObjectsFinal
- C\_FindObjectsInit
- C\_Finalize
- C\_GenerateKey
- C\_GenerateKeyPair
- C\_GenerateRandom
- C\_GetAttributeValue
- C\_GetFunctionList
- C\_GetInfo
- C\_GetMechanismInfo

- C\_GetMechanismList
- C\_GetOperationState
- C\_GetSessionInfo
- C\_GetSlotInfo
- C\_GetSlotList
- C\_GetTokenInfo
- C\_Initialize
- C\_Login
- C\_Logout
- C\_OpenSession
- C\_Sign
- C\_SignFinal
- C\_SignInit
- C\_SignRecover
- C\_SignRecoverInit
- C\_SignUpdate
- C\_UnWrapKey
- C\_Verify
- C\_VerifyFinal
- C\_VerifyInit
- C\_VerifyRecover
- C\_VerifyRecoverInit
- C\_VerifyUpdate
- C\_WrapKey

## Install and Use the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for PKCS #11

AWS CloudHSM provides two software libraries for PKCS #11. One uses Redis to create a local cache for efficiency, which can increase performance. However, consider the following before you choose the library with Redis:

### Considerations

- Redis caches all operations performed with the PKCS #11 library running on the same host, but it's not aware of operations that are performed outside the library. You can use another interface to modify keys on the HSMs in your cluster—for example, the [command line tools \(p. 39\)](#) or [software library for Java \(p. 123\)](#). But if you do, the Redis cache can fall out of sync with the HSMs. You can rebuild the cache to bring it back into sync, but it doesn't happen automatically.
- The PKCS #11 library expects that it's the only Redis consumer on the host, and it modifies some of the Redis configuration accordingly. Don't use the PKCS #11 library with Redis when you have other applications that use Redis on the same host.

### Topics

- [Prerequisites \(p. 121\)](#)
- [Install the PKCS #11 Library \(p. 121\)](#)

- [Specify a PIN for PKCS #11 \(p. 122\)](#)

## Prerequisites

Before you can use the AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11, you need the AWS CloudHSM client. The client is a daemon that establishes end-to-end encrypted communication with the HSMs in your cluster, and the PKCS #11 library communicates locally with the client. If you haven't installed and configured the AWS CloudHSM client package, do that now by following the steps at [Install and Configure the Client \(p. 27\)](#). After you install and configure the client, use the following command to start it.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

## Install the PKCS #11 Library

Complete the following steps to install the AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11.

### To install (or update) the PKCS #11 library

1. Use the following command to download the PKCS #11 library.

```
$ wget https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-pkcs11-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

2. Use the following command to install the PKCS #11 library.

```
$ sudo yum install -y ./cloudhsm-client-pkcs11-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

After you complete the preceding steps, you can find the PKCS #11 libraries in `/opt/cloudhsm/lib`.

### To install (or update) the PKCS #11 library with Redis

1. Complete the preceding steps to install the PKCS #11 library.
2. Complete the following steps to enable the repository named Extra Packages for Enterprise Linux.
  - a. Use a text editor to open the file `/etc/yum.repos.d/epel.repo`. This requires administrative permissions (`sudo`).
  - b. In the `[epel]` configuration, ensure that `enabled` is set to `1`, as shown in the following example.

```
[epel]
name=Extra Packages for Enterprise Linux 6 - $basearch
#baseurl=http://download.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/6/$basearch
mirrorlist=https://mirrors.fedoraproject.org/metalink?repo=epel-6&arch=$basearch
failovermethod=priority
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/RPM-GPG-KEY-EPEL-6
```

- c. Save the file, and then close it.
3. Use the following command to change your working directory to `/opt/cloudhsm`.

```
$ cd /opt/cloudhsm
```

4. Use the following command to install Redis and configure it for the PKCS #11 library.

```
$ sudo /opt/cloudhsm/bin/setup_redis
```

5. Use the following command to start the Redis service.

```
$ sudo service redis start
```

6. Use the following command to build the Redis cache, specifying the user name and password of a crypto user (CU) on the HSM.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/build_keystore -s <CU user name> -p <password>
```

## Specify a PIN for PKCS #11

The PKCS #11 interface defines a PIN (personal identification number) for users of a cryptographic token. To specify a PKCS #11 PIN in the context of the AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS#11, use the following format.

```
<HSM_user_name>:<password>
```

For example, the following is the PKCS #11 PIN for an HSM [crypto user \(CU\)](#) (p. 9) with user name `CryptoUser` and password `CUPassword123!`.

```
CryptoUser:CUPassword123!
```

# AWS CloudHSM Software Library for OpenSSL

The AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL is an OpenSSL dynamic engine that supports the OpenSSL command line interface and EVP APIs. The software library allows applications that are integrated with OpenSSL, such as the Nginx and Apache web servers, to offload their cryptographic processing to the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster. The engine supports the following key types and ciphers:

- RSA key generation for 2048, 3072, and 4096-bit keys.
- RSA sign/verify.
- RSA encrypt/decrypt.
- Random number generation that is cryptographically secure and FIPS-validated.

For more information, see the following topic.

### Topics

- [Install and Use the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for OpenSSL](#) (p. 122)

## Install and Use the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for OpenSSL

Before you can use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL, you need the AWS CloudHSM client. The client is a daemon that establishes end-to-end encrypted communication with the HSMs

in your cluster, and the OpenSSL library communicates locally with the client. If you haven't installed and configured the AWS CloudHSM client package, do that now by following the steps at [Install and Configure the Client](#) (p. 27). After you install and configure the client, use the following command to start it.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

### Topics

- [Install and Configure the OpenSSL Library](#) (p. 123)
- [Use the OpenSSL Library](#) (p. 123)

## Install and Configure the OpenSSL Library

Complete the following steps to install and configure the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL.

### To install (or update) and configure the OpenSSL library

1. Use the following command to download the OpenSSL library.

```
$ wget https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-dyn-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

2. Use the following command to install the OpenSSL library.

```
$ sudo yum install -y ./cloudhsm-client-dyn-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

After you complete the preceding step, you can find the OpenSSL library at `/opt/cloudhsm/lib/libcloudhsm_openssl.so`.

3. Use the following command to set an environment variable named `n3fips_password` that contains the credentials of a crypto user (CU).

```
$ export n3fips_password=<HSM user name>:<password>
```

## Use the OpenSSL Library

To use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL from the OpenSSL command line, use the `-engine` option to specify the OpenSSL dynamic engine named `cloudhsm`. For example:

```
$ openssl s_server -cert server.crt -key server.key -engine cloudhsm
```

To use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL from an OpenSSL-integrated application, ensure that your application uses the OpenSSL dynamic engine named `cloudhsm`. The shared library for the dynamic engine is located at `/opt/cloudhsm/lib/libcloudhsm_openssl.so`.

# AWS CloudHSM Software Library for Java

The AWS CloudHSM software library for Java is a provider implementation for the Sun Java JCE (Java Cryptography Extension) provider framework. It includes implementations for interfaces and engine

classes in the JCA (Java Cryptography Architecture) standard. For more information about the supported provider classes and interfaces, see the following topics.

### Topics

- [Supported Keys \(p. 124\)](#)
- [Supported Ciphers \(p. 124\)](#)
- [Supported Digests \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Supported Hash-Based Message Authentication Code \(HMAC\) Algorithms \(p. 126\)](#)
- [Supported Sign/Verify Mechanisms \(p. 126\)](#)
- [Install and Use the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for Java \(p. 126\)](#)
- [Example Code for the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for Java \(p. 129\)](#)

## Supported Keys

The AWS CloudHSM software library for Java enables you to generate the following key types.

- **RSA** – 2048-bit to 4096-bit RSA keys, in increments of 256 bits.
- **AES** – 128, 192, and 256-bit AES keys.
- EC key pairs for NIST curves P256 and P384.

In addition to standard parameters, we support the following parameters for each key that is generated.

- **Label:** A key label that you can use to search for keys.
- **isExtractable:** Indicates whether the key can be exported from the HSM. (Imported keys are never extractable.)
- **isPersistent:** Indicates whether the key remains on the HSM when the current session ends.

## Supported Ciphers

The AWS CloudHSM software library for Java supports the following algorithm, mode, and padding combinations.

Algorithm	Mode	Padding	Notes
AES	CBC	AES/CBC/NoPadding  AES/CBC/ PKCS5Padding	Implements Cipher.ENCRYPT_MODE, Cipher.DECRYPT_MODE, Cipher.WRAP_MODE, and Cipher.UNWRAP_MODE.
AES	GCM	AES/GCM/NoPadding	Implements Cipher.ENCRYPT_MODE and Cipher.DECRYPT_MODE.  When performing AES-GCM encryption, the HSM ignores the initialization vector (IV) in the request and uses

Algorithm	Mode	Padding	Notes
			an IV that it generates. When the operation completes, you must call <code>Cipher.getIV()</code> to get the IV.
DESede (Triple DES)	CBC	DESede/CBC/NoPadding  DESede/CBC/PKCS5Padding	Implements <code>Cipher.ENCRYPT_MODE</code> and <code>Cipher.DECRYPT_MODE</code> .  The key generation routines accept a size of 168 or 192 bits. However, internally, all DESede keys are 192 bits.
RSA	ECB	RSA/ECB/NoPadding  RSA/ECB/PKCS1Padding	Implements <code>Cipher.ENCRYPT_MODE</code> and <code>Cipher.DECRYPT_MODE</code> .
RSA	ECB	RSA/ECB/OAEP Padding  RSA/ECB/OAEPWithSHA-1ANDMGF1 Padding  RSA/ECB/PKCS1Padding  RSA/ECB/OAEP Padding  RSA/ECB/OAEPWithSHA-224ANDMGF1 Padding  RSA/ECB/OAEPWithSHA-256ANDMGF1 Padding  RSA/ECB/OAEPWithSHA-384ANDMGF1 Padding  RSA/ECB/OAEPWithSHA-512ANDMGF1 Padding	Implements <code>Cipher.ENCRYPT_MODE</code> and <code>Cipher.DECRYPT_MODE</code> .  OAEP Padding is OAEP with the SHA-1 padding type.

## Supported Digests

The AWS CloudHSM software library for Java supports the following message digests.

- SHA-1
- SHA-224
- SHA-256
- SHA-384

- SHA-512

## Supported Hash-Based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) Algorithms

The AWS CloudHSM software library for Java supports the following HMAC algorithms.

- HmacSHA1
- HmacSHA224
- HmacSHA256
- HmacSHA384
- HmacSHA512

## Supported Sign/Verify Mechanisms

The AWS CloudHSM software library for Java supports the following types of signature and verification.

### **RSA Signature Types**

- NONEwithRSA
- SHA1withRSA
- SHA224withRSA
- SHA256withRSA
- SHA384withRSA
- SHA512withRSA
- SHA1withRSA/PSS
- SHA224withRSA/PSS
- SHA256withRSA/PSS
- SHA384withRSA/PSS
- SHA512withRSA/PSS

### **ECDSA Signature Types**

- NONEwithECDSA
- SHA1withECDSA
- SHA224withECDSA
- SHA256withECDSA
- SHA384withECDSA
- SHA512withECDSA

## Install and Use the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for Java

Before you can use the AWS CloudHSM software library for Java, you need the AWS CloudHSM client. The client is a daemon that establishes end-to-end encrypted communication with the HSMs in your

cluster, and the Java library communicates locally with the client. If you haven't installed and configured the AWS CloudHSM client package, do that now by following the steps at [Install and Configure the Client \(p. 27\)](#). After you install and configure the client, use the following command to start it.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

### Topics

- [Installing the Java Library \(p. 127\)](#)
- [Testing the Java Library \(p. 127\)](#)
- [Providing Credentials to the Java Library \(p. 128\)](#)
- [Key Management Basics in the Java Library \(p. 129\)](#)

## Installing the Java Library

Complete the following steps to install the AWS CloudHSM software library for Java.

### To install (or update) the Java library

1. Use the following command to download the Java library.

```
$ wget https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-jce-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

2. Use the following command to install the Java library.

```
$ sudo yum install -y ./cloudhsm-client-jce-latest.x86_64.rpm
```

After you complete the preceding steps, you can find the following Java library files:

- /opt/cloudhsm/java/cloudhsm-1.0.jar
- /opt/cloudhsm/java/cloudhsm-test-1.0.jar
- /opt/cloudhsm/java/hamcrest-all-1.3.jar
- /opt/cloudhsm/java/junit.jar
- /opt/cloudhsm/java/log4j-api-2.8.jar
- /opt/cloudhsm/java/log4j-core-2.8.jar
- /opt/cloudhsm/lib/libcaviumjca.so

## Testing the Java Library

To test that the AWS CloudHSM software library for Java works with the HSMs in your cluster, complete the following steps.

### To test the Java library with your cluster

1. (Optional) If you don't already have Java installed in your environment, use the following command to install it.

```
$ sudo yum install -y java-1.8.0-openjdk
```

2. Use the following commands to set the necessary environment variables. Replace *<HSM user name>* and *<password>* with the credentials of a crypto user (CU).

```
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/opt/cloudhsm/lib
```

```
$ export HSM_PARTITION=PARTITION_1
```

```
$ export HSM_USER=<HSM user name>
```

```
$ export HSM_PASSWORD=<password>
```

3. Use the following command to run the RSA test.

```
$ java8 -cp "/usr/share/java/junit4.jar:/opt/cloudhsm/java/*" \  
org.junit.runner.JUnitCore \  
com.cavium.unittest.TestRSA
```

To run a different test, replace `TestRSA` in the preceding command with one of the following values:

- `TestAESKeyGen`
- `TestAes`
- `TestBlockCipherBuffer`
- `TestKeyStore`
- `TestLoginManager`
- `TestMac`
- `TestMessageDigest`
- `TestMessageUtil`
- `TestPadding`
- `TestProvider`
- `TestRSA`
- `TestRSAKeyGen`
- `TestSUNJce`
- `TestUtils`

## Providing Credentials to the Java Library

Your Java application must be authenticated by the HSMs in your cluster before it can use them. Each application can use one session, which is established by providing credentials in one of the following ways. In the following examples, replace *<HSM user name>* and *<password>* with the credentials of a crypto user (CU).

The first of the following examples shows how to use the `LoginManager` class to manage sessions in your code. Instead, you can let the library implicitly manage sessions when your application starts, as shown in the remaining examples. However in these latter cases it might be difficult to understand error conditions when the provided credentials are invalid or the HSMs are having problems. When you use the `LoginManager` class, you have more control over how your application deals with failures.

- Use the `LoginManager` class to provide credentials directly in your application. For example:

```
LoginManager lm = LoginManager.getInstance();  
lm.loadNative();
```

```
lm.login("PARTITION_1", "<HSM user name>", "<password>");
```

- Provide a file named `HsmCredentials.properties` in your application's CLASSPATH. The file's contents should look like the following:

```
HSM_PARTITION = PARTITION_1  
HSM_USER = <HSM user name>  
HSM_PASSWORD = <password>
```

- Provide Java system properties when running your application. The following examples show two different ways that you can do this:

```
$ java -DHSM_PARTITION=PARTITION_1 -DHSM_USER=<HSM user name> -DHSM_PASSWORD=<password>
```

```
System.setProperty("HSM_PARTITION", "PARTITION_1");  
System.setProperty("HSM_USER", "<HSM user name>");  
System.setProperty("HSM_PASSWORD", "<password>");
```

- Set system environment variables. For example:

```
$ export HSM_PARTITION=PARTITION_1
```

```
$ export HSM_USER=<HSM user name>
```

```
$ export HSM_PASSWORD=<password>
```

## Key Management Basics in the Java Library

The following key management basics can help you get started with the AWS CloudHSM software library for Java.

### To import a key implicitly

To implicitly import a key, pass the key to any API that accepts one. If the key is the correct type for the specified operation, the HSMs automatically import and use the provided key.

### To import a key explicitly

Use the utility class named `ImportKey` to import a key and set its attributes.

### To make a session key persist

Use the `Util.persistKey()` method to make a session key into a token key—that is, to persist the key in the HSMs.

### To delete a key

Use the `Util.deleteKey()` method to delete a key.

## Example Code for the AWS CloudHSM Software Library for Java

```
** Example code only - Not for production use **
```

This page includes example code that has not been fully tested. It is designed for test environments. Do not run this code in production.

The following Java code examples show you how to use the [AWS CloudHSM software library for Java \(p. 123\)](#) to perform basic tasks in AWS CloudHSM.

Before running the examples, set up your environment:

- Install and configure the [AWS CloudHSM software library for Java \(p. 126\)](#) and the [AWS CloudHSM client package \(p. 27\)](#).
- Set up a valid [HSM user name and password \(p. 96\)](#). Crypto user (CU) permissions are sufficient for these tasks. Your application uses these credentials to log in to the HSM in each example. The examples use the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` [method \(p. 131\)](#) to log in to an HSM, but you can use the method that you prefer.
- Decide how to [specify the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#).

### Topics

- [Specifying the Cavium Provider \(p. 130\)](#)
- [Logging Into and Out of an HSM \(p. 131\)](#)
- [Generating a Symmetric Key \(p. 132\)](#)
- [Encrypting and Decrypting with a Symmetric Key \(p. 134\)](#)
- [Generating an Asymmetric Key Pair \(p. 137\)](#)
- [Encrypting and Decrypting with an Asymmetric Key Pair \(p. 139\)](#)
- [Signing a Message \(p. 141\)](#)
- [Generating a Hash \(p. 143\)](#)
- [Generating an HMAC \(p. 143\)](#)
- [Managing Keys in an HSM \(p. 144\)](#)

## Specifying the Cavium Provider

The examples that follow use the Cavium provider in the AWS CloudHSM client package. To specify the Cavium provider, use either of the following techniques:

- Create an instance of the Cavium provider and pass it to the methods that take a provider, such as this `KeyGenerator.getInstance()` method.

```
CaviumProvider cp = new CaviumProvider();
keyGen = KeyGenerator.getInstance("AES", cp);
```

- Add the Cavium provider to the `$JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/security/java.security` file. Then use the `Cavium` string to refer to the provider. If you do not specify a provider, Java uses the first provider in the file, but it's best to specify the provider explicitly.

```
//Add the Cavium provider to the Java provider file
Security.addProvider(new CaviumProvider());
//Or, add the provider to the first position in the file
Security.insertProviderAt(new CaviumProvider(), 1);

//Then, you can use "Cavium" to specify the provider.
keyGen = KeyGenerator.getInstance("AES", "Cavium");
```

## Logging Into and Out of an HSM

This example demonstrates three ways for your Java application to log in to the HSMs in your cluster. These methods all use the `LoginManager` class to manage sessions in the code. Each provides credentials in a different way.

The remaining examples in this section use the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method to log in to an HSM, but you can change them to use the method that you prefer.

### Note

To run this example, you must replace `CryptoUser` and `CUPassword123!` with a valid AWS CloudHSM user name and password. Also, the `loginWithEnvVariables()` method fails unless you have set the HSM environment variables in advance.

For more details about providing credentials to the Java library, see [Providing Credentials to the Java Library \(p. 128\)](#)

```
** Example code only - Not for production use **
```

```
package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import com.cavium.cfm2.CFM2Exception;
import com.cavium.cfm2.LoginManager;

public class LoginLogoutExample {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Test three methods of logging into the HSMs in your cluster");
        System.out.println("***** Logging in using hard-coded credentials
*****");
        loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        System.out.println("Logging out");
        logout();

        System.out.println("***** Logging in using Java system properties
*****");
        loginUsingJavaProperties();
        System.out.println("Logging out");
        logout();

        System.out.println("***** Logging in using environment variables
*****");
        loginWithEnvVariables();
        System.out.println("Logging out");
        logout();
    }
}

/**
 * Method #1: Use hard-coded credentials
 *
 * Replace "CryptoUser" and "CUPassword123!" with a valid user name and password.
 */
public static void loginWithExplicitCredentials() {
    LoginManager lm = LoginManager.getInstance();
    lm.loadNative();
    try {
        lm.login("PARTITION_1", "CryptoUser", "CUPassword123!");
        int appID = lm.getAppid();
        System.out.println("App ID = " + appID);
        int sessionID = lm.getSessionid();
        System.out.println("Session ID = " + sessionID);
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
```

```

        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
/**
 * Method #2: Use Java system properties
 *
 * Replace "CryptoUser" and "CUPassword123!" with a valid user name and password.
 */
public static void loginUsingJavaProperties() {
    System.setProperty("HSM_PARTITION", "PARTITION_1");
    System.setProperty("HSM_USER", "CryptoUser");
    System.setProperty("HSM_PASSWORD", "CUPassword123!");
    LoginManager lm = LoginManager.getInstance();
    lm.loadNative();
    try {
        lm.login();
        int appID = lm.getAppid();
        System.out.println("App ID = " + appID);
        int sessionID = lm.getSessionid();
        System.out.println("Session ID = " + sessionID);
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}

/**
 * Method #3: Use environment variables
 *
 * Before invoking the JVM, set the following environment variables
 * using a valid user name and password
 * export HSM_PARTITION=PARTITION_1
 * export HSM_USER=<hsm-user-name>
 * export HSM_PASSWORD=<password>
 */
public static void loginWithEnvVariables() {
    LoginManager lm = LoginManager.getInstance();
    lm.loadNative();
    try {
        lm.login();
        int appID = lm.getAppid();
        System.out.println("App ID = " + appID);
        int sessionID = lm.getSessionid();
        System.out.println("Session ID = " + sessionID);
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}

public static void logout() {
    try {
        LoginManager.getInstance().logout();
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
}

```

## Generating a Symmetric Key

This example shows how to generate a 256-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) symmetric key and save it in an HSM. By default, the keys that the HSM generates are not saved in the HSM ("persistent"). To make a key persistent, that is, to convert a *session key* into a *token key*, call the `Util.persistKey()` method.

This example does not return any output, but you can save the key object and use the key handle in other operations.

This example uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method of the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class to log in to the HSM. You can substitute the login method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider, and substitute it for the `Cavium` string.

```
** Example code only - Not for production use **
```

```
package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.security.Key;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;
import java.security.SecureRandom;
import java.security.Security;

import javax.crypto.KeyGenerator;
import javax.crypto.SecretKey;

import com.cavium.cfm2.CFM2Exception;
import com.cavium.cfm2.Util;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumAESKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumKey;
import com.cavium.provider.CaviumProvider;

public class SymmetricKeyGeneration {
    // Generate a 256-bit AES symmetric key and save it in the HSM
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        LoginLogoutExample.loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        new SymmetricKeyGeneration().generateAESKey(256, true);
        LoginLogoutExample.logout();
    }

    public Key generateAESKey(int keySize, boolean isPersistent) {
        KeyGenerator keyGen;
        try {
            keyGen = KeyGenerator.getInstance("AES", "Cavium");
            keyGen.init(keySize);
            SecretKey aesKey = keyGen.generateKey();
            System.out.println("Generated the AES key");
            if(aesKey instanceof CaviumAESKey) {
                System.out.println("Key is of type CaviumAESKey");
                CaviumAESKey ck = (CaviumAESKey) aesKey;
                //Save the key handle. You'll need it to encrypt/decrypt in the future.
                System.out.println("Key handle = " + ck.getHandle());
                //Get the key label. The SDK generates this label for the key.
                System.out.println("Key label = " + ck.getLabel());
                System.out.println("Is the key extractable? : " + ck.isExtractable());

                //By default, keys are not saved in the HSM.
                System.out.println("Is the key persistent? : " + ck.isPersistent());
                // Save the key in the HSM, if requested
                if(isPersistent){
                    System.out.println("Make the key persistent:");
                    makeKeyPersistent(ck);
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Is key persistent? : " + ck.isPersistent());

            //Verify key type and size

```

```

        System.out.println("Key algorithm : " + ck.getAlgorithm());
        System.out.println("Key size : " + ck.getSize());
    }
    // Return the key
    return aesKey;
} catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
} catch (NoSuchProviderException e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
} catch (Exception e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
}
return null;
}
}

public static void makeKeyPersistent(Key key) {
    CaviumAESKey caviumAESKey = (CaviumAESKey) key;
    try {
        Util.persistKey(caviumAESKey);
        System.out.println("Added Key to HSM");
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
}
}

```

## Encrypting and Decrypting with a Symmetric Key

This example shows how to encrypt and decrypt a string using a 256-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) symmetric key.

The example uses the AES algorithm with Galois Counter Mode (GCM), which uses authenticated encryption with associated data (AEAD). The code specifies an additional authenticated data (AAD) string and an initialization vector (IV), which is an arbitrary number, like a nonce. The encryption operation changes the AAD and IV, so you need to save the new AAD and IV and use them to decrypt the ciphertext. The `encrypt()` method in this example returns an object (`FinalResult`) that includes the ciphertext, the IV (and its length) and the AAD (and its length).

To generate the symmetric key, this example calls the `generateAESKey()` method of the `SymmetricKeyGeneration` class in the [the section called "Generating a Symmetric Key" \(p. 132\)](#) example. It uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method in the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class to log in to the HSM, but you can substitute the login method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider and substitute it for the `Cavium` string.

**\*\* Example code only - Not for production use \*\***

```

package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples.crypto.symmetric;

import java.security.InvalidAlgorithmParameterException;
import java.security.InvalidKeyException;
import java.security.Key;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;
import java.security.SecureRandom;

```

```

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.Base64;

import javax.crypto.BadPaddingException;
import javax.crypto.Cipher;
import javax.crypto.IllegalBlockSizeException;
import javax.crypto.NoSuchPaddingException;
import javax.crypto.spec.GCMParameterSpec;

import com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples.key.symmetric.SymmetricKeyGeneration;
import com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples.operations.LoginLogoutExample;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumAESKey;

public class SymmetricEncryptDecryptExample {

    String plainText = "This is a sample plaintext message";
    String aad = "AAD data";
    String transformation = "AES/GCM/NoPadding";
    int ivSizeInBytes=12;
    int tagLengthInBytes = 16;
    /*
     * AEAD modes, such as GCM and CCM, authenticate the AAD before authenticating the
     ciphertext.
     * To avoid buffering the ciphertext internally, supply all AAD data to GCM/CCM
     implementations
     * before the ciphertext is processed.
     */
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        SymmetricEncryptDecryptExample obj = new SymmetricEncryptDecryptExample();
        LoginLogoutExample.loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        // Generate an 256-bit AES key and save it in the HSM
        Key key =new SymmetricKeyGeneration().generateAESKey(256, true);
        // Generate an initialization vector (IV)
        byte[] iv = obj.generateIV(obj.ivSizeInBytes);

        System.out.println("Performing AES encryption operation");
        // Encrypt the plaintext with the specified algorithm, key, IV, and the AAD
        byte[] result = obj.encrypt(obj.transformation, (CaviumAESKey) key, obj.plainText,
        iv, obj.aad, obj.tagLengthInBytes);
        System.out.println("Plaintext is encrypted");
        System.out.println("Base64-encoded encrypted text = " +
        Base64.getEncoder().encodeToString(result));
        System.out.println("Decrypting the ciphertext");
        //Extract the IV for the decrypt operation
        iv = Arrays.copyOfRange(result, 0, 16);
        byte[] cipherText = Arrays.copyOfRange(result, 16, result.length);

        // Decrypt the ciphertext using the algorithm, key, IV, and AAD
        byte[] decryptedText = obj.decrypt(obj.transformation, (CaviumAESKey) key,
        cipherText, iv, obj.aad, obj.tagLengthInBytes);
        System.out.println("Plaintext = "+new String(decryptedText));
        LoginLogoutExample.logout();
    }
    // This encrypt operation uses an initialization vector (IV) and additional
    authenticated data (AAD)
    public byte[] encrypt(String transformation, CaviumAESKey key, String plainText, byte[]
    iv, String aad, int tagLength) {
        try {
            // Create an encryption cipher
            Cipher encCipher = Cipher.getInstance(transformation, "Cavium");
            // Create a parameter spec
            GCMParameterSpec gcmSpec = new GCMParameterSpec(tagLengthInBytes * 8, iv);
            // Configure the encryption cipher
            encCipher.init(Cipher.ENCRYPT_MODE, key, gcmSpec);
            encCipher.updateAAD(aad.getBytes());

```

```

        encCipher.update(plainText.getBytes());
        // Encrypt the plaintext data
        byte[] ciphertext = encCipher.doFinal();

        //Save the new IV and AADTag from the HSM.
        //You'll need them to create the GCMParameterSpec for the decrypt operation.
        byte[] finalResult = new byte[encCipher.getIV().length + ciphertext.length];
        System.arraycopy(encCipher.getIV(), 0, finalResult, 0,
encCipher.getIV().length);
        System.arraycopy(ciphertext, 0, finalResult, encCipher.getIV().length,
ciphertext.length);
        return finalResult;

    } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException | NoSuchProviderException |
NoSuchPaddingException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (InvalidAlgorithmParameterException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (IllegalBlockSizeException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (BadPaddingException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
    }
    return null;
}
// Generate an initialization vector (IV)
public byte[] generateIV(int ivSizeinByets) {
    SecureRandom sr;
    try {
        sr = SecureRandom.getInstance("AES-CTR-DRBG", "Cavium");
        byte[] iv = new byte[ivSizeinByets];
        sr.nextBytes(iv);
        return iv;
    } catch (Exception e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
    }
    return null;
}
//Decrypt with the specified algorithm, key, ciphertext, IV, and AAD.
public byte[] decrypt(String transformation, CaviumAESKey key, byte[] cipherText ,
byte[] iv, String aad, int tagLength) {
    Cipher decCipher;
    try {
        //Create the decryption cipher
        decCipher = Cipher.getInstance(transformation, "Cavium");
        // Create a Cavium parameter spec from the IV and AAD
        GCMParameterSpec gcmSpec = new GCMParameterSpec(tagLengthInBytes * 8,iv);
        //Configure the decryption cipher
        decCipher.init(Cipher.DECRYPT_MODE, key, gcmSpec);
        decCipher.updateAAD(aad.getBytes());
        //Decrypt the ciphertext and return the plaintext
        return decCipher.doFinal(cipherText);

    } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException | NoSuchProviderException |
NoSuchPaddingException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block

```

```

        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (InvalidAlgorithmParameterException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (IllegalBlockSizeException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (BadPaddingException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
    return null;
}
}
}

```

## Generating an Asymmetric Key Pair

This example shows how to generate an RSA key pair and then save the public and private keys in the HSM. To make a key persistent, that is, to convert a *session key* into a *token key*, call the `Util.persistKey()` method.

The example does not return any output, but you can save the key pair object and use the public and private key handles in other operations.

To log in to the HSM, this example uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method of the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class, but you can substitute the login method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider, and substitute it for the `Cavium` string.

**\*\* Example code only - Not for production use \*\***

```

package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import java.math.BigInteger;
import java.security.InvalidAlgorithmParameterException;
import java.security.Key;
import java.security.KeyPair;
import java.security.KeyPairGenerator;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;
import java.security.interfaces.RSAPrivateKey;
import java.security.interfaces.RSAPublicKey;

import com.cavium.cfm2.CFM2Exception;
import com.cavium.cfm2.Util;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumAESKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPrivateKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPublicKey;
import com.cavium.key.parameter.CaviumRSAKeyGenParameterSpec;

public class AsymmetricKeyGeneration {

    // Generate a 2048-bit RSA key pair and save it in the HSM
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        LoginLogoutExample.loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        new AsymmetricKeyGeneration().generateRSAKeyPair(2048, true);
        LoginLogoutExample.logout();
    }

    public KeyPair generateRSAKeyPair(int keySize, boolean isPersistent) {

```

```
KeyPairGenerator keyPairGen;
try {
    // Create and configure a key pair generator
    keyPairGen = KeyPairGenerator.getInstance("rsa", "Cavium");
    keyPairGen.initialize(new CaviumRSAKeyGenParameterSpec(keySize, new
BigInteger("65537")));
    // Generate the key pair
    KeyPair kp = keyPairGen.generateKeyPair();

    if (kp == null) {
        System.out.println("Failed to generate key pair");
    }
    RSAPrivateKey privKey = (RSAPrivateKey) kp.getPrivate();
    RSAPublicKey pubKey = (RSAPublicKey) kp.getPublic();
    System.out.println("Generated RSA key pair");
    //Write out properties of RSA private key
    if (privKey instanceof CaviumRSAPrivateKey) {
        CaviumRSAPrivateKey cavRSAPrivateKey = (CaviumRSAPrivateKey) privKey;
        System.out.println("Private key handle = " + cavRSAPrivateKey.getHandle());
        System.out.println("Private key label = " + cavRSAPrivateKey.getLabel());
        System.out.println("Is private key extractable = " +
cavRSAPrivateKey.isExtractable());
        System.out.println("Is private key persistent = " +
cavRSAPrivateKey.isPersistent());

        // Save RSA private key in HSM, if requested
        if(isPersistent) {
            makeKeyPersistent(cavRSAPrivateKey);
            System.out.println("Added RSA private key to HSM");
        }
        System.out.println("Modulus = " + cavRSAPrivateKey.getModulus());
        System.out.println("Private exponent = " +
cavRSAPrivateKey.getPrivateExponent());
    }
    //Write out properties of RSA public key
    if(pubKey instanceof CaviumRSAPublicKey) {
        CaviumRSAPublicKey cavRSAPublicKey = (CaviumRSAPublicKey) pubKey;
        //Save the key handle. You'll need it to encrypt/decrypt in the future.
        System.out.println("Public key handle = " + cavRSAPublicKey.getHandle());
        System.out.println("Public key label = " + cavRSAPublicKey.getLabel());
        System.out.println("Is public key extractable = "
+cavRSAPublicKey.isExtractable());
        System.out.println("Is public key persistent = " +
cavRSAPublicKey.isPersistent());

        // Save RSA public key in HSM, if requested
        if(isPersistent) {
            makeKeyPersistent(cavRSAPublicKey);
            System.out.println("Added RSA public key to HSM");
        }
        System.out.println("Added RSA public key to HSM");
        System.out.println("Modulus = " + cavRSAPublicKey.getModulus());
        System.out.println("Public exponent = " +
cavRSAPublicKey.getPublicExponent());
    }
    // Return the key pair
    return kp;
} catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException | NoSuchProviderException e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
} catch (InvalidAlgorithmParameterException e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
}
}
return null;
}
```

```
// Save key in HSM
protected void makeKeyPersistent(CaviumKey key) {
    CaviumKey rsaKey = (CaviumKey) key;
    try {
        Util.persistKey(rsaKey);
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
}
```

## Encrypting and Decrypting with an Asymmetric Key Pair

This example shows how to encrypt and decrypt a string using a 2048-bit RSA key pair. First it encrypts with the public key and decrypts with the private key. Then it encrypts with the private key and decrypts with the public key.

To generate the key pair, this example calls the `generateRSAKeyPair()` method of the `AsymmetricKeyGeneration` class in the [the section called “Generating an Asymmetric Key Pair” \(p. 137\)](#) example. It uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method in the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class to log in to the HSM, but you can substitute the login method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider and substitute it for the `Caviums` string.

**\*\* Example code only - Not for production use \*\***

```
package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import java.security.InvalidKeyException;
import java.security.Key;
import java.security.KeyPair;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;
import java.security.interfaces.RSAPrivateKey;
import java.security.interfaces.RSAPublicKey;

import javax.crypto.BadPaddingException;
import javax.crypto.Cipher;
import javax.crypto.IllegalBlockSizeException;
import javax.crypto.NoSuchPaddingException;

import org.bouncycastle.util.encoders.Base64;

import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPrivateKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPublicKey;

public class AsymmetricEncryptDecryptExample {

    String plainText = "This is a plaintext string";
    // Specify the encryption algorithm
    String transformation = "RSA/ECB/OAEPWithSHA-224ANDMGF1Padding";
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Log into the HSM
        LoginLogoutExample.loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        // Generate a 2048-bit RSA key pair and save it in the HSM
        KeyPair kp = new AsymmetricKeyGeneration().generateRSAKeyPair(2048, true);
        // Create an example object
        AsymmetricEncryptDecryptExample obj = new AsymmetricEncryptDecryptExample();
        //Get the private key
```

```

        CaviumRSAPrivateKey privKey = (CaviumRSAPrivateKey) (RSAPrivateKey)
kp.getPrivate();
        //Get the public key
        CaviumRSAPublicKey pubKey = (CaviumRSAPublicKey) (RSAPublicKey) kp.getPublic();
        System.out.println("Use the private key to encrypt; use the public key to
decrypt");
        // Encrypt the plaintext with the private key
        byte[] cipherText = obj.asymmetricKeyEncryption(obj.transformation, privKey,
obj.plainText);
        System.out.println("CipherText = " + Base64.toBase64String(cipherText));
        // Decrypt the ciphertext with the public key
        String plainText = obj.asymmetricKeyDecryption(obj.transformation, pubKey,
cipherText);
        System.out.println("PlainText = " + plainText);
        System.out.println("Encrypt with public key; decrypt with private key");
        // Encrypt with the public key
        cipherText = obj.asymmetricKeyEncryption(obj.transformation, pubKey,
obj.plainText);
        System.out.println("CipherText = " + Base64.toBase64String(cipherText));
        // Decrypt with private key
        plainText = obj.asymmetricKeyDecryption(obj.transformation, privKey, cipherText);
        System.out.println("PlainText = " + plainText);
        LoginLogoutExample.logout();
    }
// Encrypt with the specified algorithm and key
    public byte[] asymmetricKeyEncryption(String transformation, Key key, String plainText)
    {
        try {
            Cipher cipher = Cipher.getInstance(transformation, "Cavium");
            cipher.init(Cipher.ENCRYPT_MODE, key);
            cipher.update(plainText.getBytes());
            // Encrypt the plaintext
            byte[] cipherText = cipher.doFinal(plainText.getBytes());
            return cipherText;
        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (NoSuchProviderException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (NoSuchPaddingException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (IllegalBlockSizeException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (BadPaddingException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return null;
    }
// Decrypt with the specified algorithm and key
    public String asymmetricKeyDecryption(String transformation, Key key, byte[]
cipherText) {
        try {
            Cipher cipher = Cipher.getInstance(transformation, "Cavium");
            cipher.init(Cipher.DECRYPT_MODE, key);
            // Decrypt the ciphertext
            byte[] plainText = cipher.doFinal(cipherText);
            return new String(plainText);
        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block

```

```

        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (NoSuchProviderException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (NoSuchPaddingException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (IllegalBlockSizeException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (BadPaddingException e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
    return null;
}
}
}

```

## Signing a Message

This example shows how to sign a message with a key in an HSM. The example generates a 4096-bit asymmetric key pair. It uses the private key to sign the message. Then it uses the public key to verify the message signature.

To generate the key pair, this example calls the `generateRSAKeyPair()` method of the `AsymmetricKeyGeneration` class in the [the section called "Generating an Asymmetric Key Pair" \(p. 137\)](#) example. It uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method in the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class to log in to the HSM, but you can substitute the login method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider, and substitute it for the `Cavium` string.

**\*\* Example code only - Not for production use \*\***

```

package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import java.security.InvalidKeyException;
import java.security.Key;
import java.security.KeyPair;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;
import java.security.Signature;
import java.security.SignatureException;
import java.util.Base64;

import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPrivateKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPublicKey;

public class SignatureExample {

    String sampleMessage = "This is a sample message.";
    String signingAlgorithmn = "SHA512withRSA/PSS";
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        LoginLogoutExample.loginUsingJavaProperties();
        SignatureExample obj = new SignatureExample();

        //Generate a 4096-bit pair and save it in the HSM
        KeyPair kp = new AsymmetricKeyGeneration().generateRSAKeyPair(4096, true);
    }
}

```

```
        System.out.println("Generated key pair");

        //Sign the message with the private key and the specified signing algorithm
        byte[] signature = obj.signMessage(obj.sampleMessage, obj.signingAlgorithm,
(CaviumRSAPrivateKey)kp.getPrivate());
        System.out.println("Signature : " + Base64.getEncoder().encodeToString(signature));

        //Verify the signature
        boolean isVerificationSuccessful = obj.verifySign(obj.sampleMessage,
obj.signingAlgo, (CaviumRSAPublicKey)kp.getPublic(), signature);
        System.out.println("Verification result : " + isVerificationSuccessful);
        LoginLogoutExample.logout();
    }
    //Use the private key to sign the message
    public byte[] signMessage(String message, String signingAlgorithm, CaviumRSAPrivateKey
privateKey) {
        try {
            Signature sig = Signature.getInstance(signingAlgorithm, "Cavium");
            sig.initSign(privateKey);
            sig.update(message.getBytes());
            byte[] signature = null;
            signature = sig.sign();
            return signature;

        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException | NoSuchProviderException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (SignatureException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return null;
    }
    //Use the public key to verify the message signature
    public boolean verifySign(String message, String signingAlgorithm, CaviumRSAPublicKey
publicKey, byte[] signature) {
        try {
            Signature sig = Signature.getInstance(signingAlgorithm, "Cavium");
            sig.initVerify(publicKey);
            sig.update(message.getBytes());

            boolean isVerificationSuccessful = sig.verify(signature);
            return isVerificationSuccessful;
        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException | NoSuchProviderException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (SignatureException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return false;
    }
}
```

## Generating a Hash

This example shows how to generate a hash of a message using an HSM and the SHA-512 hash algorithm.

To log in to the HSM, this example uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method of the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class, but you can substitute the login method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider and substitute it for the `Cavium` string.

```
** Example code only - Not for production use **
```

```
package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import java.security.MessageDigest;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;
import javax.xml.bind.DatatypeConverter;

public class HashExample {
    String plainText = "This is a sample plaintext message.";
    String hashAlgorithm = "SHA-512";
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        LoginLogoutExample.loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        HashExample obj = new HashExample();
        // Generate the hash
        byte[] hash = obj.getHash(obj.plainText, obj.hashAlgorithm);

        System.out.println("Hash : " + DatatypeConverter.printHexBinary(hash));
        LoginLogoutExample.logout();
    }

    public byte[] getHash(String message, String hashAlgorithm) {
        try {
            // Specify the Cavium provider
            MessageDigest md = MessageDigest.getInstance(hashAlgorithm, "Cavium");
            md.update(message.getBytes());
            byte[] hash = md.digest();
            return hash;
        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException | NoSuchProviderException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

## Generating an HMAC

This example shows how to generate a hash-based message authentication code (HMAC) in the HSM and use it to hash a message. Unlike a typical hash, an HMAC uses a hash function and a cryptographic key.

To generate the key pair, this example calls the `generateRSAKeyPair()` method of the `AsymmetricKeyGeneration` class in the [the section called "Generating an Asymmetric Key Pair" \(p. 137\)](#) example. It uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method in the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class to log in to the HSM, but you can substitute the login method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider and substitute it for the `Cavium` string.

**\*\* Example code only - Not for production use \*\***

```
package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import java.security.InvalidKeyException;
import java.security.Key;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;

import javax.crypto.Mac;
import javax.xml.bind.DatatypeConverter;

import com.cavium.key.CaviumAESKey;

public class HMACExample {

    String message = "This is a plaintext message.";
    String macAlgorithm= "HmacSHA512";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        LoginLogoutExample.loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        // Generate a 256-bit AES key for the HMAC
        Key aesKey = new SymmetricKeyGeneration().generateAESKey(256, true);
        HMACExample obj = new HMACExample();

        // Generate the HMAC using the plaintext, algorithm, and key
        byte[] mac= obj.getHmac(obj.message, obj.macAlgorithm, (CaviumAESKey)aesKey);
        System.out.println("HMAC : " + DatatypeConverter.printHexBinary(mac));
        LoginLogoutExample.logout();
    }
    // The HMAC function takes a hash algorithm and a cryptographic key
    public byte[] getHmac(String message, String macAlgorithm, CaviumAESKey key) {
        try {
            Mac mac = Mac.getInstance( macAlgorithm,"Cavium");
            mac.init(key);
            mac.update(message.getBytes());
            byte[] hmacValue = mac.doFinal();
            return hmacValue;

        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException | NoSuchProviderException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
            // TODO Auto-generated catch block
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

## Managing Keys in an HSM

This example shows how to manage keys in an HSM. It demonstrates the following operations:

- **Get** a reference to a key in the HSM.
- **Export** a key from the HSM. This operation returns the key, not just a reference, so you can import the key into a different HSM and use it in other operations. It does not delete the key from the HSM.
- **Delete** a key from the HSM.

- **Import** a key into the HSM. This example returns a key handle that you can use to identify the key in other operations.

**Note**

To use a key in an encryption operation, just specify the key handle. You do not need to get or export the key.

To log into the HSM, this example uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method of the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class.

To generate the key pair, this example calls the `generateRSAKeyPair()` method of the `AsymmetricKeyGeneration` class in the [the section called “Generating an Asymmetric Key Pair” \(p. 137\)](#) example. It uses the `loginWithExplicitCredentials()` method in the [LoginLogoutExample \(p. 131\)](#) class to log in to the HSM, but you can substitute the `login` method that you prefer. Also, the example assumes that [the Cavium provider \(p. 130\)](#) is included in your Java provider file. If it is not, create an instance of the provider and substitute it for the `Cavium` string.

You can also use the `key_mgmt_util` command line tool to [manage keys in AWS CloudHSM \(p. 99\)](#).

```
** Example code only - Not for production use **
```

```
package com.amazonaws.cloudhsm.examples;

import java.security.InvalidKeyException;
import java.security.Key;
import java.security.KeyFactory;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.security.NoSuchProviderException;
import java.security.PrivateKey;
import java.security.PublicKey;
import java.security.spec.InvalidKeySpecException;
import java.security.spec.PKCS8EncodedKeySpec;
import java.security.spec.X509EncodedKeySpec;
import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.Vector;

import javax.crypto.BadPaddingException;
import javax.crypto.SecretKey;
import javax.crypto.spec.SecretKeySpec;
import javax.crypto.KeyGenerator;

import org.bouncycastle.util.Arrays;

import com.cavium.cfm2.CFM2Exception;
import com.cavium.cfm2.ImportKey;
import com.cavium.cfm2.Util;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumAESKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumKeyAttributes;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPrivateKey;
import com.cavium.key.CaviumRSAPublicKey;
import com.cavium.key.parameter.CaviumKeyGenAlgorithmParameterSpec;

public class KeyManagement {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        LoginLogoutExample.loginWithExplicitCredentials();
        //Get a reference to a key in the HSM
        // Replace the placeholder with an actual key handle value
        long keyHandle = 262194;
    }
}
```

```

CaviumKey ck = getKey(keyHandle);

//Delete the specified key from the HSM
// Replace the placeholder with an actual key handle value
deleteKey(51);
Key key = exportKey(keyHandle);

//Import a key
// Generate a 256-bit AES symmetric key
KeyGenerator kg = KeyGenerator.getInstance("AES");
kg.init(256);
Key keyToBeImported = kg.generateKey();
//Import the key as extractable and persistent
//You can use the key handle to identify the key in other operations
long importedKeyHandle = importKey(keyToBeImported, "Test", true, true);
System.out.println("Imported Key Handle : " + importedKeyHandle);

LoginLogoutExample.logout();
}
//Gets an existing key from the HSM
//The type of the object that is returned depends on the key type
public static CaviumKey getKey(long handle) {
    try {
        byte[] keyAttribute = Util.getKeyAttributes(handle);
        CaviumKeyAttributes cka = new CaviumKeyAttributes(keyAttribute);
        if(cka.getKeyType() == CaviumKeyAttributes.KEY_TYPE_AES) {
            CaviumAESKey aesKey = new CaviumAESKey(handle, cka);
            return aesKey;
        }
        else if(cka.getKeyType() == CaviumKeyAttributes.KEY_TYPE_RSA &&
cka.getKeyClass() == CaviumKeyAttributes.CLASS_PRIVATE_KEY) {
            CaviumRSAPrivateKey privKey = new CaviumRSAPrivateKey(handle, cka);
            return privKey;
        }
        else if(cka.getKeyType() == CaviumKeyAttributes.KEY_TYPE_RSA &&
cka.getKeyClass() == CaviumKeyAttributes.CLASS_PUBLIC_KEY) {
            CaviumRSAPublicKey pubKey = new CaviumRSAPublicKey(handle, cka);
            return pubKey;
        }
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
    return null;
}
//Deletes an existing persisted key
public static void deleteKey(long handle) {
    CaviumKey ck = getKey(handle);
    try {
        Util.deleteKey(ck);
        System.out.println("Key Deleted!");
    } catch (CFM2Exception e) {
        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
//Exports an existing persisted key
//The type of the object that is returned depends on the key type
public static Key exportKey(long handle) {
    try {
        byte[] encoded = Util.exportKey( handle);
        byte[] keyAttribute = Util.getKeyAttributes(handle);
        CaviumKeyAttributes cka = new CaviumKeyAttributes(keyAttribute);
        if(cka.getKeyType() == CaviumKeyAttributes.KEY_TYPE_AES) {
            Key aesKey = new SecretKeySpec(encoded, 0, encoded.length, "AES");
            return aesKey;
        }
    }
}

```

```
    }
    else if(cka.getKeyType() == CaviumKeyAttributes.KEY_TYPE_RSA &&
cka.getKeyClass() == CaviumKeyAttributes.CLASS_PRIVATE_KEY) {
        PrivateKey privateKey = KeyFactory.getInstance("RSA").generatePrivate(new
PKCS8EncodedKeySpec(encoded));
        return privateKey;
    }
    else if(cka.getKeyType() == CaviumKeyAttributes.KEY_TYPE_RSA &&
cka.getKeyClass() == CaviumKeyAttributes.CLASS_PUBLIC_KEY) {
        PublicKey publicKey = KeyFactory.getInstance("RSA").generatePublic(new
X509EncodedKeySpec(encoded));
        return publicKey;
    }
    System.out.println(new String(encoded));
} catch (BadPaddingException | CFM2Exception e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
} catch (InvalidKeySpecException e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
} catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException e) {
    // TODO Auto-generated catch block
    e.printStackTrace();
}
}
return null;
}
//Imports a key explicitly
public static void importKey(Key key, String keyLabel, boolean isExtractable, boolean
isPersistent) {
    //Create a new key parameter spec to identify the key. Specify a label and Boolean
values for extractable and persistent.
    CaviumKeyGenAlgorithmParameterSpec spec = new
CaviumKeyGenAlgorithmParameterSpec(keyLabel, isExtractable, isPersistent);
    try {
        ImportKey.importKey(key, spec);
    } catch (InvalidKeyException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
}
}
```

# Integrating Third-Party Applications with AWS CloudHSM

Some of the [use cases \(p. 2\)](#) for AWS CloudHSM involve integrating third-party software applications with the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster. By integrating third-party software with AWS CloudHSM, you can accomplish a variety of security related goals. The following topics describe how to accomplish some of these goals.

## Topics

- [Improve Your Web Server's Security with SSL/TLS Offload with AWS CloudHSM \(p. 148\)](#)
- [Oracle Database Transparent Data Encryption \(TDE\) with AWS CloudHSM \(p. 157\)](#)

## Improve Your Web Server's Security with SSL/TLS Offload with AWS CloudHSM

Web servers and their clients (web browsers) can use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS). These protocols confirm the identity of the web server and establish a secure connection to send and receive data over the internet. This is known as HTTPS. The web server uses a public-private key pair and a public key certificate to establish an HTTPS session with each client. This process involves a lot of computation for the web server, but you can offload some of this computation to the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster. This is sometimes known as SSL acceleration. This offloading reduces the burden on your web server and provides extra security by storing the server's private key in the HSMs.

In this solution, you use either the [Apache HTTP Server](#) or [Nginx](#) web server software, running on Amazon Linux. Both of these web server programs natively integrate with [OpenSSL](#) to support HTTPS using SSL or TLS. The [AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL \(p. 122\)](#) provides an interface that enables these web servers to use the HSMs in your cluster for cryptographic processing and key storage. The AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL is the bridge that connects the web server software with your AWS CloudHSM cluster.

Complete the following steps to accomplish SSL/TLS offload with the Apache or Nginx web servers.

### To configure SSL/TLS offload with Apache or Nginx

1. Follow the steps in [Set Up the Prerequisites \(p. 149\)](#) to prepare your environment.
2. Follow the steps in [Import or Generate a Private Key and Certificate \(p. 150\)](#) to import or generate a private key and certificate.
3. Follow the steps in [Configure the Web Server \(p. 153\)](#) to configure the Apache or Nginx web server and verify that SSL/TLS offload is working.

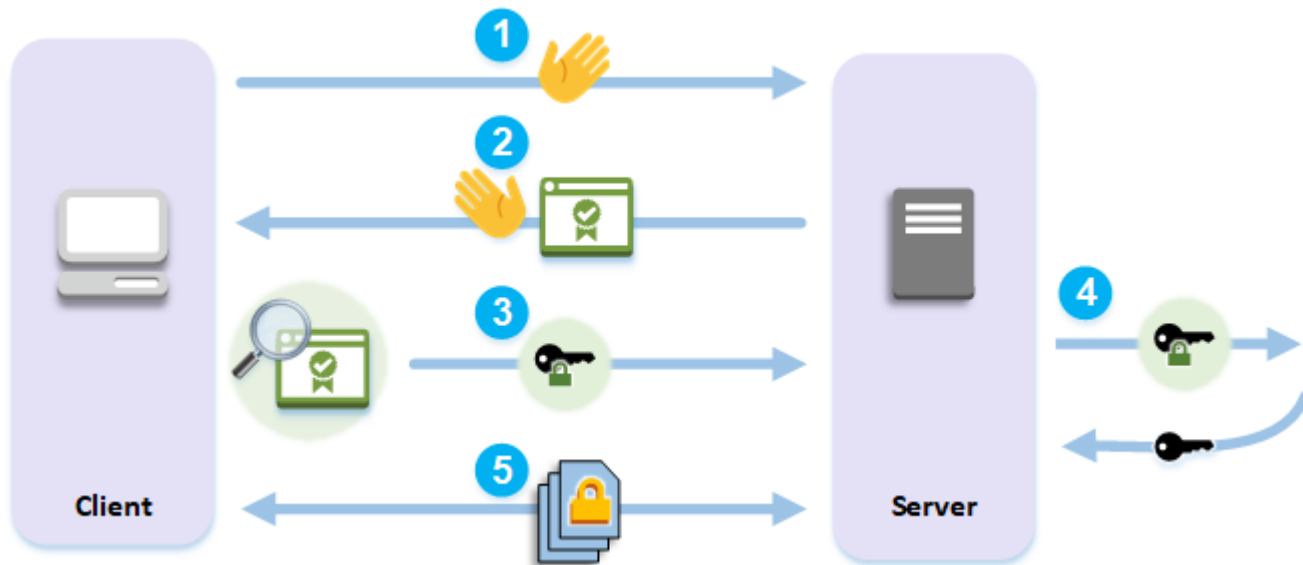
After you complete these steps, you have a web server running the Apache or Nginx web server software. Your server has a certificate and a corresponding private key which is stored in the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster.

### SSL/TLS offload illustration

To establish an HTTPS connection, your server performs a handshake process with clients. As part of this process, the server offloads some of the cryptographic processing to the HSMs, as shown in the following figure. Each step of the process is explained below the figure.

**Note**

The following image and process assumes that RSA is used for server verification and key exchange. The process is slightly different when Diffie–Hellman is used instead of RSA.



1. The client sends a hello message to the server.
2. The server responds with a hello message and sends the server's certificate.
3. The client performs the following actions:
  - a. Verifies that the server's certificate is signed by one of the root certificates that the client trusts.
  - b. Extracts the public key from the server's certificate.
  - c. Generates a premaster secret and encrypts it with the server's public key.
  - d. Sends the encrypted premaster secret to the server.
4. To decrypt the client's premaster secret, the server sends it to the HSM. The private key in the HSM is used to decrypt the premaster secret, which is then returned to the server.

Independently, the client and server each use the premaster secret and some information from the hello messages to calculate a master secret.

5. The handshake process ends. For the rest of the session, all messages sent between the client and the server are encrypted with derivatives of the master secret.

## Web Server SSL/TLS Offload: Set Up the Prerequisites

To accomplish web server SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM, you need the following prerequisites:

- An active AWS CloudHSM cluster with at least one HSM.
- An Amazon EC2 instance running the Amazon Linux operating system with the following software installed:
  - The AWS CloudHSM client and command line tools.
  - The Apache or Nginx web server software.
  - The AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL.
- A crypto user (CU) to own and manage the private key on the HSMs in your cluster.

Complete the following steps to prepare your environment for web server SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM.

### To prepare your environment for web server SSL/TLS offload

1. Complete the steps in [Getting Started: Create A Cluster \(p. 11\)](#). After you complete these steps, you have an active cluster with one HSM. You also have an Amazon EC2 instance, known as a *client instance*, running the Amazon Linux operating system. The AWS CloudHSM client and command line tools are also installed and configured.
2. (Optional) Add more HSMs to your cluster. For more information, see [Adding an HSM \(p. 30\)](#).
3. [Connect to the client instance \(p. 27\)](#) that you created previously. On the client instance, do the following:
  - a. [Start the AWS CloudHSM client \(p. 40\)](#).
  - b. [Update the configuration file for the command line tool known as `cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util` \(p. 40\)](#).
  - c. Use the command line tool known as `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` to create a crypto user (CU) on your cluster. For more information, see [Managing HSM Users \(p. 96\)](#).
  - d. [Install and configure the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL \(p. 123\)](#).
  - e. Choose whether to install the Apache or Nginx web server software. Then complete one of the following steps:
    - Use the following command to install the Apache web server.

```
$ sudo yum install -y httpd24 mod24_ssl
```

- Use the following command to install the Nginx web server.

```
$ sudo yum install -y nginx
```

After you complete these steps, you can [import or generate a private key and certificate \(p. 150\)](#).

## Web Server SSL/TLS Offload: Import or Generate a Private Key and Certificate

To support HTTPS using SSL or TLS, your web server software needs a private key and a corresponding public key certificate. To accomplish web server SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM, the private key must be stored in the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster. You can accomplish this in one of the following ways:

- If you already have a private key and corresponding certificate, you can import the private key into the HSMs.
- If you don't have a private key and corresponding certificate, you can generate a private key in the HSMs. Then you can use the private key to create a certificate signing request (CSR), which is then signed to produce a certificate.

Regardless of which method you choose, you then export a private key handle from the HSMs and save it to a file. The file doesn't contain the actual private key. It contains a reference to the handle of the private key that is stored on the HSMs. The file's contents are known as a *fake PEM format* private key. Your web server software uses the fake PEM format private key file, along with the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL, to offload SSL or TLS processing to the HSMs in your cluster.

### Topics

- [Import an Existing Private Key \(p. 151\)](#)

- [Generate a Private Key and Certificate \(p. 152\)](#)

## Import an Existing Private Key

If you already have a private key and a corresponding certificate that you use for HTTPS on your web server, you can import the private key into the HSMs.

### To import a private key into the HSMs

1. [Connect to the client instance \(p. 27\)](#) that you [created previously \(p. 149\)](#). If necessary, copy your existing private key and certificate to the instance.
2. Use the following command to start the AWS CloudHSM client.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

3. Use the following command to start the command line tool known as `key_mgmt_util`.

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/key_mgmt_util
```

4. Use the following command to log in to the HSM. Replace `<user name>` and `<password>` with the user name and password of the crypto user (CU) that you [created previously \(p. 149\)](#).

```
Command: loginHSM -u CU -s <user name> -p <password>
```

5. Use the following commands to import your private key into the HSM.
  - a. Use the following command to create a symmetric wrapping key that is valid only for the current session.

```
Command: genSymKey -t 31 -s 16 -sess -l wrapping_key_for_import
Cfm3GenerateSymmetricKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Symmetric Key Created. Key Handle: 6
Cluster Error Status
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

- b. Use the following command to import your existing private key into the HSMs. For this command, do the following:
  - Replace `web_server_existing.key` with the name of the file that contains your private key.
  - Replace `web_server_imported_key` with the preferred label for your imported private key.
  - Replace `<wrapping key handle>` with the value of the key handle that was generated in the previous command. In the previous example, the key handle of the wrapping key is 6.

```
Command: importPrivateKey -f web_server_existing.key -l web_server_imported_key -w <wrapping key handle>
BER encoded key length is 1219
Cfm3WrapHostKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Cfm3CreateUnwrapTemplate returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
Cfm3UnwrapKey returned: 0x00 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

```
Private Key Unwrapped. Key Handle: 8  
  
Cluster Error Status  
Node id 0 and err state 0x00000000 : HSM Return: SUCCESS
```

6. Use the following command to export the private key handle in fake PEM format and save it to a file. For this command, do the following:
  - Replace *<private key handle>* with the key handle of the imported private key. This handle was generated by the second command in the preceding step. In the preceding example, the key handle of the private key is 8.
  - Replace *web\_server\_fake\_PEM.key* with the preferred file name for your exported private key in fake PEM format.

```
Command: getCaviumPrivKey -k <private key handle> -out web_server_fake_PEM.key
```

7. Use the following command to stop key\_mgmt\_util.

```
Command: exit
```

After you complete these steps, you can [configure your web server for SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM \(p. 153\)](#).

## Generate a Private Key and Certificate

If you don't have a private key and a corresponding certificate to use for HTTPS on your web server, you can generate a private key on the HSMs. Then you use the private key to create a certificate signing request (CSR), which is then signed to produce a certificate.

### To generate a private key on the HSMs

1. [Connect to the client instance \(p. 27\)](#) that you [created previously \(p. 149\)](#).
2. Use the following command to set an environment variable named `n3fips_password` that contains the user name and password of the crypto user (CU) [that you created previously \(p. 149\)](#). Replace *<CU user name>* with the user name of the CU, and replace *<password>* with the CU's password.

```
$ export n3fips_password=<CU user name>:<password>
```

3. Use the following command to use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL to generate a private key on the HSMs. The exported private key is saved in fake PEM format. Replace *web\_server\_fake\_PEM.key* with the preferred file name for your exported private key in fake PEM format.

```
$ openssl genrsa -engine cloudhsm -out web_server_fake_PEM.key 2048
```

### To create a CSR

- Use the following command to use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL to create a CSR. Replace *web\_server\_fake\_PEM.key* with the name of the file that contains your private key in fake PEM format. You created this file in the final step of the previous procedure. Replace *web\_server.csr* with the preferred file name for your CSR.

This is an interactive command. Respond to each instruction, providing information for each field of the CSR. This same information appears in the certificate after it's signed.

```
$ openssl req -engine cloudhsm -new -key web_server_fake_PEM.key -out web_server.csr
```

To produce a certificate, this CSR must be signed. To sign the CSR, you typically use a certificate authority (CA). You give the CSR file (*web\_server.csr*) to a CA. The CA signs the CSR, which creates a signed certificate and then gives you the certificate. Your web server software uses the signed certificate for HTTPS.

As an alternative, you can use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL to create a self-signed certificate. When you use a self-signed certificate for HTTPS, your web server's clients (web browsers) typically don't trust the web server. You shouldn't use a self-signed certificate in production, but this kind of certificate might be adequate for testing.

### To create a self-signed certificate

#### Important

The following example is a proof-of-concept demonstration only. For production systems, use a more secure method (such as a CA) to sign the CSR.

- Use the following command to use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL to create a self-signed certificate. Replace *web\_server\_fake\_PEM.key* with the name of the file that contains your private key in fake PEM format. [You created this file previously \(p. 152\)](#). Replace *web\_server.csr* with the preferred file name for your certificate.

This is an interactive command. Respond to each instruction, providing information for each field of the certificate.

```
$ openssl req -engine cloudhsm -new -x509 -days 365 -key web_server_fake_PEM.key -out web_server.crt
```

After you complete these steps, you can [configure your web server for SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM \(p. 153\)](#).

## Web Server SSL/TLS Offload: Configure the Web Server

To finish setting up your web server for SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM, complete the following steps:

1. Configure your web server software (Apache or Nginx) to use the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL to enable HTTPS.
2. Add your web server to a security group that allows inbound HTTP and HTTPS traffic.
3. Verify that an HTTPS connection from your web browser gets the certificate whose private key is stored in your AWS CloudHSM cluster.

For more information, see the following topics.

#### Topics

- [Update the Web Server Configuration \(p. 154\)](#)

- [Add the Web Server to a Security Group \(p. 156\)](#)
- [Verify SSL/TLS Offload \(p. 157\)](#)

## Update the Web Server Configuration

To update your web server configuration, complete the steps in one of the following procedures. Choose the procedure that corresponds to your web server software.

### Update the web server configuration for Apache HTTP Server

1. [Connect to the client instance \(p. 27\)](#) that you [created previously \(p. 149\)](#). This is the same instance where you installed Apache HTTP Server.
2. Use the following command to make a backup copy of the default certificate.

```
$ sudo cp /etc/pki/tls/certs/localhost.crt /etc/pki/tls/certs/localhost.crt.backup
```

3. Use the following command to make a backup copy of the default private key.

```
$ sudo cp /etc/pki/tls/private/localhost.key /etc/pki/tls/private/localhost.key.backup
```

4. Use the following command to copy your web server certificate to the required location. Replace `web_server.crt` with the name of your web server certificate.

```
$ sudo cp web_server.crt /etc/pki/tls/certs/localhost.crt
```

5. Use the following command to copy your private key in fake PEM format to the required location. Replace `web_server_fake_PEM.key` with the name of the file that contains your private key in fake PEM format. You [created this file previously \(p. 150\)](#).

```
$ sudo cp web_server_fake_PEM.key /etc/pki/tls/private/localhost.key
```

6. Use the following command to change the ownership of these files so that the user named apache can read them.

```
$ sudo chown apache /etc/pki/tls/certs/localhost.crt /etc/pki/tls/private/localhost.key
```

7. Use the following command to make a backup copy of the file named `/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf`.

```
$ sudo cp /etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf /etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf.backup
```

8. Use a text editor to edit the file named `/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf`. Replace the line that starts with `SSLCryptoDevice` so that it looks like the following:

```
SSLCryptoDevice cloudhsm
```

Then save the file. This requires Linux root permissions.

9. Use the following command to make a backup copy of the file named `/etc/sysconfig/httpd`.

```
$ sudo cp /etc/sysconfig/httpd /etc/sysconfig/httpd.backup
```

10. Use a text editor to edit the file named `/etc/sysconfig/httpd`. Add the following line, specifying the user name and password of the crypto user (CU) [that you created previously \(p. 149\)](#). Replace `<CU user name>` with the user name of the CU, and replace `<password>` with the CU's password.

```
export n3fips_password=<CU user name>:<password>
```

Then save the file. This requires Linux root permissions.

11. Use the following command to start the Apache HTTP Server.

```
$ sudo service httpd start
```

## Update the web server configuration for Nginx

1. [Connect to the client instance \(p. 27\)](#) that you [created previously \(p. 149\)](#). This is the same instance where you installed Nginx.
2. Use the following command to create the required directories for the web server certificate and private key.

```
$ sudo mkdir -p /etc/pki/nginx/private
```

3. Use the following command to copy your web server certificate to the required location. Replace `web_server.crt` with the name of your web server certificate.

```
$ sudo cp web_server.crt /etc/pki/nginx/server.crt
```

4. Use the following command to copy your private key in fake PEM format to the required location. Replace `web_server_fake_PEM.key` with the name of the file that contains your private key in fake PEM format. You [created this file previously \(p. 150\)](#).

```
$ sudo cp web_server_fake_PEM.key /etc/pki/nginx/private/server.key
```

5. Use the following command to change the ownership of these files so that the user named nginx can read them.

```
$ sudo chown nginx /etc/pki/nginx/server.crt /etc/pki/nginx/private/server.key
```

6. Use the following command to make a backup copy of the file named `/etc/nginx/nginx.conf`.

```
$ sudo cp /etc/nginx/nginx.conf /etc/nginx/nginx.conf.backup
```

7. Use a text editor to edit the file named `/etc/nginx/nginx.conf`. At the top of the file, add the following line:

```
ssl_engine cloudhsm;
```

Then uncomment the TLS section of the file so that it looks like the following:

```
# Settings for a TLS enabled server.
#
server {
    listen      443 ssl http2 default_server;
    listen      [::]:443 ssl http2 default_server;
    server_name _;
    root        /usr/share/nginx/html;

    ssl_certificate "/etc/pki/nginx/server.crt";
    ssl_certificate_key "/etc/pki/nginx/private/server.key";
    # It is *strongly* recommended to generate unique DH parameters
```

```
# Generate them with: openssl dhparam -out /etc/pki/nginx/dhparams.pem 2048
#ssl_dhparam "/etc/pki/nginx/dhparams.pem";
ssl_session_cache shared:SSL:1m;
ssl_session_timeout 10m;
ssl_protocols TLSv1 TLSv1.1 TLSv1.2;
ssl_ciphers HIGH:SEED:!aNULL:!eNULL:!EXPORT:!DES:!RC4:!MD5:!PSK:!RSAPSK:!aDH:!
aECDH:!EDH-DSS-DES-CBC3-SHA:!KRB5-DES-CBC3-SHA:!SRP;
ssl_prefer_server_ciphers on;

# Load configuration files for the default server block.
include /etc/nginx/default.d/*.conf;

location / {
}

error_page 404 /404.html;
    location = /40x.html {
}

error_page 500 502 503 504 /50x.html;
    location = /50x.html {
}
}
```

Then save the file. This requires Linux root permissions.

8. Use the following command to make a backup copy of the file named `/etc/sysconfig/nginx`.

```
$ sudo cp /etc/sysconfig/nginx /etc/sysconfig/nginx.backup
```

9. Use a text editor to edit the file named `/etc/sysconfig/nginx`. Add the following line, specifying the user name and password of the crypto user (CU) [that you created previously \(p. 149\)](#). Replace `<CU user name>` with the user name of the CU, and replace `<password>` with the CU's password.

```
export n3fips_password=<CU user name>:<password>
```

Then save the file. This requires Linux root permissions.

10. Use the following command to start the Nginx web server.

```
$ sudo service nginx start
```

## Add the Web Server to a Security Group

To connect to your web server from a client (web browser), assign your client instance to a security group that allows inbound HTTP and HTTPS traffic. That is, it must allow inbound TCP traffic on ports 80 and 443.

### To assign your client instance to a security group for HTTP and HTTPS

1. Open the security groups section of the Amazon EC2 console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/v2/home#SecurityGroups>.
2. Choose **Create Security Group**.
3. For **Create Security Group**, do the following:
  - a. For **Security group name**, type a name for the security group that you are creating. For example, **Inbound HTTP & HTTPS**.

- b. (Optional) For **Description**, type a description for the security group that you are creating. For example, **Allow inbound traffic on ports 80 and 443**.
  - c. For **VPC**, choose the VPC that contains your client instance.
  - d. Choose **Add Rule**.
  - e. For **Type**, choose **HTTP**.
  - f. Choose **Add Rule**.
  - g. For **Type**, choose **HTTPS**.
4. Choose **Create**.
  5. In the navigation pane, choose **Instances**.
  6. Select the box next to your client instance. Then choose **Actions, Networking, Change Security Groups**.
  7. Select the box next to the security group that you created previously. Then choose **Assign Security Groups**.

## Verify SSL/TLS Offload

After you add the web server to a security group, you can verify that SSL/TLS offload with AWS CloudHSM is working. You can do this with a web browser such as [Mozilla Firefox](#) or [Google Chrome](#), or with a tool such as [OpenSSL s\\_client](#).

### To verify SSL/TLS offload with a web browser

1. Use a web browser such as [Mozilla Firefox](#) or [Google Chrome](#) to connect to your web server. Ensure that the URL in the address bar begins with `https://`.
2. Use your web browser to view the web server certificate. For more information, see the following:
  - For Mozilla Firefox, see [View a Certificate](#) on the Mozilla Support website.
  - For Google Chrome, see [Understand Security Issues](#) on the Google Developers website.

Other web browsers might have similar features that you can use to view the web server certificate.

3. Ensure that the certificate is the one that you [configured the web server to use \(p. 154\)](#), whose private key is stored in your AWS CloudHSM cluster.

### To verify SSL/TLS offload with OpenSSL

1. Use the following OpenSSL command to connect to your web server using HTTPS. Replace `<server name>` with the host name or IP address of your web server.

```
$ openssl s_client -connect <server name>:443
```

2. Ensure that the certificate is the one that you [configured the web server to use \(p. 154\)](#), whose private key is stored in your AWS CloudHSM cluster.

# Oracle Database Transparent Data Encryption (TDE) with AWS CloudHSM

Some versions of Oracle's database software offer a feature called Transparent Data Encryption (TDE). With TDE, the database software encrypts data before storing it on disk. The data in the database's table

columns or tablespaces is encrypted with a table key or tablespace key. These keys are encrypted with the TDE master encryption key. You can store the TDE master encryption key in the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster, which provides additional security.

In this solution, you use Oracle Database installed on an Amazon EC2 instance. Oracle Database integrates with the [AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 \(p. 117\)](#) to store the TDE master key in the HSMs in your cluster.

**Important**

You cannot use an Oracle instance in Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) to integrate with AWS CloudHSM. You must install Oracle Database on an Amazon EC2 instance. For information about integrating an Oracle instance in Amazon RDS with AWS CloudHSM Classic, see [Using AWS CloudHSM Classic to Store Amazon RDS Oracle TDE Keys](#) in the *Amazon Relational Database Service User Guide*.

Complete the following steps to accomplish Oracle TDE integration with AWS CloudHSM.

**To configure Oracle TDE integration with AWS CloudHSM**

1. Follow the steps in [Set Up the Prerequisites \(p. 158\)](#) to prepare your environment.
2. Follow the steps in [Configure the Database and Generate the Master Encryption Key \(p. 159\)](#) to configure Oracle Database to integrate with your AWS CloudHSM cluster.

## Oracle TDE with AWS CloudHSM: Set Up the Prerequisites

To accomplish Oracle TDE integration with AWS CloudHSM, you need the following:

- An active AWS CloudHSM cluster with at least one HSM.
- An Amazon EC2 instance running the Amazon Linux operating system with the following software installed:
  - The AWS CloudHSM client and command line tools.
  - The AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11.
  - Oracle Database. AWS CloudHSM supports Oracle TDE integration with Oracle Database versions 11 and 12.
- A crypto user (CU) to own and manage the TDE master encryption key on the HSMs in your cluster.

Complete the following steps to set up all of the prerequisites.

**To set up the prerequisites for Oracle TDE integration with AWS CloudHSM**

1. Complete the steps in [Getting Started: Create A Cluster \(p. 11\)](#). After you complete these steps, you have an active cluster with one HSM. You also have an Amazon EC2 instance, known as a *client instance*, running the Amazon Linux operating system and with the AWS CloudHSM client and command line tools installed and configured.
2. (Optional) Add more HSMs to your cluster. For more information, see [Adding an HSM \(p. 30\)](#).
3. [Connect to the client instance \(p. 27\)](#) that you created previously. On the client instance, do the following:
  - a. [Install the AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 \(p. 120\)](#).
  - b. Install Oracle Database. For more information, see the [Oracle Database documentation](#). AWS CloudHSM supports Oracle TDE integration with Oracle Database versions 11 and 12.
  - c. [Start the AWS CloudHSM client \(p. 40\)](#).

- d. [Update the configuration file for the command line tool known as `cloudhsm\_mgmt\_util` \(p. 40\)](#).
- e. Use the command line tool known as `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` to create a crypto user (CU) on your cluster. For more information, see [Managing HSM Users \(p. 96\)](#).

After you complete these steps, you can [Configure the Database and Generate the Master Encryption Key \(p. 159\)](#).

## Oracle TDE with AWS CloudHSM: Configure the Database and Generate the Master Encryption Key

To integrate Oracle TDE with your AWS CloudHSM cluster, complete the following steps:

1. [Update the Oracle Database Configuration \(p. 159\)](#) to use the HSMs in your cluster as the *external security module*. For information about external security modules, see [Introduction to Transparent Data Encryption](#) in the *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide*.
2. [Generate the Oracle TDE Master Encryption Key \(p. 160\)](#) on the HSMs in your cluster.

For more information, see the following topics.

### Topics

- [Update the Oracle Database Configuration \(p. 159\)](#)
- [Generate the Oracle TDE Master Encryption Key \(p. 160\)](#)

## Update the Oracle Database Configuration

To update the Oracle Database configuration, complete the steps in the following procedure.

### To update the Oracle configuration

1. [Connect to the client instance \(p. 27\)](#) that you [created previously \(p. 158\)](#). This is the same instance where you installed Oracle Database.
2. Make a backup copy of the file named `sqlnet.ora`. For the location of this file, see the Oracle documentation.
3. Use a text editor to edit the file named `sqlnet.ora`. Add the following line. If an existing line in the file begins with `encryption_wallet_location`, replace the existing line with the following one.

```
encryption_wallet_location=(source=(method=hsm))
```

Then save the file.

4. Run the following command to create the directory where Oracle Database expects to find the library file for the AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11.

```
$ sudo mkdir -p /opt/oracle/extapi/64/hsm
```

5. Use one of the following commands to copy the AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 file to the directory that you created in the previous step.
  - If you installed the PKCS #11 library without Redis, run the following command.

```
$ sudo cp /opt/cloudhsm/lib/libcloudhsm_pkcs11_standard.so /opt/oracle/extapi/64/hsm/
```

- If you installed the PKCS #11 library with Redis, run the following command.

```
$ sudo cp /opt/cloudhsm/lib/libcloudhsm_pkcs11_redis.so /opt/oracle/extapi/64/hsm/
```

**Note**

The `/opt/oracle/extapi/64/hsm` directory must contain only one library file. Copy only the library file that corresponds to how you [installed the PKCS #11 library \(p. 121\)](#). If additional files exist in that directory, remove them.

6. Run the following command to change the ownership of the `/opt/oracle` directory and everything inside it.

```
$ sudo chown -R oracle:dba /opt/oracle
```

7. Start the Oracle Database.

## Generate the Oracle TDE Master Encryption Key

To generate the Oracle TDE master key on the HSMs in your cluster, complete the steps in the following procedure.

### To generate the master key

1. Use the `sqlplus` command to open Oracle SQL\*Plus. When prompted, type the system password that you set when you installed Oracle Database.
2. Run the SQL statement that creates the master encryption key, as shown in the following examples. Use the statement that corresponds to your version of Oracle Database. Replace `<CU user name>` with the user name of the crypto user (CU) [that you created previously \(p. 158\)](#). Replace `<password>` with the CU's password.

**Important**

Run the following command only once. Each time the command is run, it creates a new master encryption key.

- For Oracle Database version 11, run the following SQL statement.

```
SQL> alter system set encryption key identified by "<CU user name>:<password>";
```

- For Oracle Database version 12, run the following SQL statement.

```
SQL> administer key management set key identified by "<CU user name>:<password>";
```

If the response is `System altered` or `keystore altered`, then you successfully generated and set the master key for Oracle TDE.

3. (Optional) Run the following command to verify the status of the *Oracle wallet*.

```
SQL> select * from v$encryption_wallet;
```

If the wallet is not open, use one of the following commands to open it. Replace `<CU user name>` with the user name of the crypto user (CU) [that you created previously \(p. 158\)](#). Replace `<password>` with the CU's password.

- For Oracle 11, run the following command to open the wallet.

```
SQL> alter system set encryption wallet open identified by "<CU user name>:<password>";
```

To manually close the wallet, run the following command.

```
SQL> alter system set encryption wallet close identified by "<CU user  
name>:<password>";
```

- For Oracle 12, run the following command to open the wallet.

```
SQL> administer key management set keystore open identified by "<CU user  
name>:<password>";
```

To manually close the wallet, run the following command.

```
SQL> administer key management set keystore close identified by "<CU user  
name>:<password>";
```

# Getting API Logs with AWS CloudTrail

AWS CloudHSM is integrated with AWS CloudTrail, a service that records all AWS CloudHSM API calls in log files, and delivers those files to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket that you choose. By default, your log files are encrypted with Amazon S3 server-side encryption (SSE).

CloudTrail records all calls to the AWS CloudHSM API, including those from the AWS CloudHSM console or from your code. For the full list of AWS CloudHSM API operations, see [Actions](#) in the *AWS CloudHSM API Reference*.

From the information recorded by CloudTrail, you can determine the request that was made to AWS CloudHSM, the source IP address from which the request was made, who made the request, when it was made, and so on. CloudTrail log files contain all AWS API calls in your AWS account, not only the AWS CloudHSM API calls.

To get started with CloudTrail, see [Getting Started with CloudTrail](#) in the *AWS CloudTrail User Guide*.

## Understanding AWS CloudHSM Log File Entries in CloudTrail

CloudTrail log files contain one or more log entries in [JSON \(JavaScript Object Notation\)](#) format. Each log entry represents a single API call and includes information about the requested operation, the date and time of the operation, the request and response parameters, and so on. Log entries are not an ordered stack trace of API calls, so they do not appear in any particular order.

For more information about CloudTrail log entries, see [CloudTrail Event Reference](#) in the *AWS CloudTrail User Guide*.

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry for a `CreateHsm` call to the AWS CloudHSM API.

```
{
  "eventVersion": "1.05",
  "userIdentity": {
    "type": "AssumedRole",
    "principalId": "AROAJZVM5NEGZSTCITAMM:ExampleSession",
    "arn": "arn:aws:sts::111122223333:assumed-role/AdminRole/ExampleSession",
    "accountId": "111122223333",
    "accessKeyId": "ASIAIY22AX6VRYNBJGJSA",
    "sessionContext": {
      "attributes": {
        "mfaAuthenticated": "false",
        "creationDate": "2017-07-11T03:48:44Z"
      }
    },
    "sessionIssuer": {
      "type": "Role",
      "principalId": "AROAJZVM5NEGZSTCITAMM",
      "arn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/AdminRole",
      "accountId": "111122223333",
      "userName": "AdminRole"
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }  
  },  
  "eventTime": "2017-07-11T03:50:45Z",  
  "eventSource": "cloudhsm.amazonaws.com",  
  "eventName": "CreateHsm",  
  "awsRegion": "us-west-2",  
  "sourceIPAddress": "205.251.233.179",  
  "userAgent": "aws-internal/3",  
  "requestParameters": {  
    "availabilityZone": "us-west-2b",  
    "clusterId": "cluster-fw7mh6mayb5"  
  },  
  "responseElements": {  
    "hsm": {  
      "eniId": "eni-65338b5a",  
      "clusterId": "cluster-fw7mh6mayb5",  
      "state": "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS",  
      "eniIp": "10.0.2.7",  
      "hsmId": "hsm-6lz2hfmnzbx",  
      "subnetId": "subnet-02c28c4b",  
      "availabilityZone": "us-west-2b"  
    }  
  },  
  "requestID": "1dae0370-65ec-11e7-a770-6578d63de907",  
  "eventID": "b73a5617-8508-4c3d-900d-aa8ac9b31d08",  
  "eventType": "AwsApiCall",  
  "recipientAccountId": "111122223333"  
}
```

# Troubleshooting AWS CloudHSM

If you encounter problems with AWS CloudHSM, the following topics can help you resolve them.

## Topics

- [Lost Connection to the Cluster \(p. 164\)](#)
- [Keep HSM Users In Sync Across HSMs In The Cluster \(p. 165\)](#)
- [Verify the Performance of the HSM \(p. 165\)](#)

## Lost Connection to the Cluster

When you [configured the AWS CloudHSM client \(p. 27\)](#), you provided the IP address of the first HSM in your cluster. This IP address is saved in the configuration file for the AWS CloudHSM client. When the client starts, it tries to connect to this IP address. If it can't—for example, because the HSM failed or you deleted it—you might see errors like the following:

```
LIQUIDSECURITY: Daemon socket connection error
```

```
LIQUIDSECURITY: Invalid Operation
```

To resolve these errors, update the configuration file with the IP address of an active, reachable HSM in the cluster.

### To update the configuration file for the AWS CloudHSM client

1. Use one of the following ways to find the IP address of an active HSM in your cluster.
  - View the **HSMs** tab on the cluster details page in the [AWS CloudHSM console](#).
  - Use the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI) to issue the [describe-clusters](#) command.

You need this IP address in a subsequent step.

2. Use the following command to stop the client.

```
$ sudo stop cloudhsm-client
```

3. Use the following command to update the client's configuration file, providing the IP address that you found in a previous step.

```
$ sudo /opt/cloudhsm/bin/configure -a <IP address>
```

4. Use the following command to start the client.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

## Keep HSM Users In Sync Across HSMs In The Cluster

To [manage your HSM's users \(p. 96\)](#), you use a AWS CloudHSM command line tool known as `cloudhsm_mgmt_util`. It communicates only with the HSMs that are in the tool's configuration file. It's not aware of other HSMs in the cluster that are not in the configuration file.

AWS CloudHSM synchronizes the keys on your HSMs across all other HSMs in the cluster, but it doesn't synchronize the HSM's users or policies. When you use `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` to [manage HSM users \(p. 96\)](#), these user changes might affect only some of the cluster's HSMs—the ones that are in the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` configuration file. This can cause problems when AWS CloudHSM syncs keys across HSMs in the cluster, because the users that own the keys might not exist on all HSMs in the cluster.

To avoid these problems, edit the `cloudhsm_mgmt_util` configuration file *before* managing users. For more information, see [Update the cloudhsm\\_mgmt\\_util Configuration File \(p. 40\)](#).

## Verify the Performance of the HSM

To verify the performance of the HSMs in your AWS CloudHSM cluster, you can use the `pkpspeed` tool that is included with the AWS CloudHSM client software. To use `pkpspeed`, first [connect to your client instance \(p. 27\)](#) and then [install and configure the AWS CloudHSM client software \(p. 27\)](#).

After you install and configure the AWS CloudHSM client, issue the following command to start it.

```
$ sudo start cloudhsm-client
```

If you already installed the client software, you might need to download and install the latest version to get `pkpspeed`. You can find the `pkpspeed` tool at `/opt/cloudhsm/bin/pkpspeed`.

To use `pkpspeed`, issue the **`pkpspeed`** command, specifying the user name and password of a crypto user (CU) on the HSM. Then set the options to use, considering the following recommendations.

### Recommendations

- To test the performance of RSA sign and verify operations, choose the `RSA_CRT` cipher. Don't choose `RSA`. The ciphers are equivalent, but `RSA_CRT` is optimized for performance.
- Start with a small number of threads. For testing AES performance, one thread is typically enough to show maximum performance. For testing RSA performance (`RSA_CRT`), three or four threads is typically enough.

The following examples show the options that you can choose with `pkpspeed` to test the HSM's performance for RSA and AES operations.

### Example – Using `pkpspeed` to test RSA performance

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/pkpspeed -s <CU user name> -p <password>
SDK Version: 2.03

Available Ciphers:
  AES_128
  AES_256
  3DES
  RSA (non-CRT. modulus size can be 2048/3072)
  RSA_CRT (same as RSA)
```

```
For RSA, Exponent will be 65537

Current FIPS mode is: 00000002
Enter the number of thread [1-10]: 3
Enter the cipher: RSA_CRT
Enter modulus length: 2048
Enter time duration in Secs: 60
Starting non-blocking speed test using data length of 245 bytes...
[Test duration is 60 seconds]

Do you want to use static key[y/n] (Make sure that KEK is available)? n
```

### Example – Using pkpspeed to test AES performance

```
$ /opt/cloudhsm/bin/pkpspeed -s <CU user name> -p <password>
SDK Version: 2.03

Available Ciphers:
    AES_128
    AES_256
    3DES
    RSA (non-CRT. modulus size can be 2048/3072)
    RSA_CRT (same as RSA)
For RSA, Exponent will be 65537

Current FIPS mode is: 00000002
Enter the number of thread [1-10]: 1
Enter the cipher: AES_256
Enter the data size [1-16200]: 8192
Enter time duration in Secs: 60
Starting non-blocking speed test using data length of 8192 bytes...
```

# AWS CloudHSM Limits

By default, the following limits apply to your AWS CloudHSM resources. These limits apply per AWS Region and per AWS account.

- Clusters: 4
- HSMs: 6

There is no limit on the number of HSMs per cluster, so you can distribute the HSMs across clusters any way you like.

To request an increase to these limits, use the [service limit increase form](#) in the AWS Support Center.

# AWS CloudHSM Client and Software Version History

The following topics contain the version history for the AWS CloudHSM client and software libraries.

## Topics

- [AWS CloudHSM Client](#) (p. 168)
- [PKCS #11 Library](#) (p. 169)
- [OpenSSL Library](#) (p. 170)
- [Java Library](#) (p. 170)

## AWS CloudHSM Client

### Current Version: 1.0.11

You can download the current version of the AWS CloudHSM client from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-latest.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-latest.x86_64.rpm). For more information, see [Install and Configure the Client](#) (p. 27).

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Improved load balancing.
- Improved performance.
- Improved handling of lost server connections.

### Previous Versions

#### Version 1.0.10

You can download version 1.0.10 from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-1.0-10.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-1.0-10.x86_64.rpm).

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Updated the `key_mgmt_util` command line tool to enable AES wrapped key import.
- Improved performance.
- Fixed various bugs.

#### Version 1.0.8

You can download version 1.0.8 from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-1.0-8.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-1.0-8.x86_64.rpm).

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Improved setup experience.

- Added respawning to the client upstart service.
- Fixed various bugs.

#### **Version 1.0.7**

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Added the pkpspeed performance testing tool. For more information, see [Verify the Performance of the HSM \(p. 165\)](#).
- Fixed bugs to improve stability and performance.

#### **Version 1.0.0**

This is the initial release.

## PKCS #11 Library

### Current Version: 1.0.11

You can download the current version of the AWS CloudHSM software library for PKCS #11 from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-pkcs11-latest.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-pkcs11-latest.x86_64.rpm). For more information, see [Installing the PKCS #11 Library \(p. 120\)](#).

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Added support for the CKM\_RSA\_PKCS\_PSS sign/verify mechanism.

### Previous Versions

#### **Version 1.0.10**

You can download version 1.0.10 from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-pkcs11-1.0-10.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-pkcs11-1.0-10.x86_64.rpm).

Updated the version number for consistency.

#### **Version 1.0.8**

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Fixed bugs to address relative paths in the Redis setup.

#### **Version 1.0.7**

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Added an accelerated version of the library that uses a Redis local cache to improve performance.
- Fixed bugs related to attribute handling.
- Added the ability to generate ECDSA keys.

#### **Version 1.0.0**

This is the initial release.

## OpenSSL Library

### Current Version: 1.0.11

You can download the current version of the AWS CloudHSM software library for OpenSSL from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-dyn-latest.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-dyn-latest.x86_64.rpm). For more information, see [Installing the OpenSSL Library](#) (p. 122).

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Updated the version number for consistency.

### Previous Versions

#### Version 1.0.10

You can download version 1.0.10 from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-dyn-1.0-10.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-dyn-1.0-10.x86_64.rpm).

Updated the version number for consistency.

#### Version 1.0.8

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Improved performance.

#### Version 1.0.7

Updated the version number for consistency.

#### Version 1.0.0

This is the initial release.

## Java Library

### Current Version: 1.0.11

You can download the current version of the AWS CloudHSM software library for Java from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-jce-latest.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-jce-latest.x86_64.rpm). For more information, see [Installing the Java Library](#) (p. 126).

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Improved the performance of several algorithms.
- Added Triple DES (3DES) key import feature.
- Various bug fixes.

## Previous Versions

### Version 1.0.10

You can download version 1.0.10 from [https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-jce-1.0-10.x86\\_64.rpm](https://s3.amazonaws.com/cloudhsmv2-software/cloudhsm-client-jce-1.0-10.x86_64.rpm).

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Added support for additional algorithms.
- Improved performance.

### Version 1.0.8

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Updated the version number for consistency.

### Version 1.0.7

Significant changes in this version include the following:

- Added support for additional algorithms.
- Signed the JAR files for compatibility with the Sun JCE provider.

### Version 1.0.0

This is the initial release.

# Document History

The following list contains the dates and descriptions of significant changes to the documentation for AWS CloudHSM.

## **November 9, 2017 – New and updated documentation for several features and tools**

- Added documentation about using quorum authentication (M of N access control) for crypto officers (COs). For more information, see [Enforcing Quorum Authentication \(M of N Access Control\)](#) (p. 104).
- Added detailed documentation about using the `key_mgmt_util` command line tool. For more information, see [key\\_mgmt\\_util Command Reference](#) (p. 44).
- Updated the documentation for the latest versions of the AWS CloudHSM client and software libraries. For more information, see [Client and Software Version History](#) (p. 168).

## **October 25, 2017 – Added documentation for new third-party integration and new client and software releases**

- Published new documentation for integrating third-party applications. For more information, see [Oracle Database Encryption](#) (p. 157).
- Published new documentation that corresponds with the latest versions of the AWS CloudHSM client and software libraries. For more information, see [Client and Software Version History](#) (p. 168).

## **October 12, 2017 – Added documentation for third-party integrations**

Published new documentation for integrating third-party applications. For more information, see [Integrating Third-Party Applications](#) (p. 148) and [Improve Web Server Security with SSL/TLS Offload](#) (p. 148).

## **September 20, 2017 – New client and software releases**

Published new documentation that corresponds with the latest versions of the AWS CloudHSM client and software libraries. For more information, see [Client and Software Version History](#) (p. 168).

## **August 29, 2017 – Added Java example code**

Published several [code samples in Java](#) (p. 129) that demonstrate how to use the [AWS CloudHSM software library for Java](#) (p. 123).

## **August 14, 2017 – New guide**

Published this guide, the *AWS CloudHSM User Guide*, to coincide with the release of the new AWS CloudHSM product.